# **EDR-G9010 Series User Manual**

Version 2.0, September 2022

www.moxa.com/products



### EDR-G9010 Series User Manual

The software described in this manual is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of that agreement.

## **Copyright Notice**

© 2022 Moxa Inc. All rights reserved.

### Trademarks

The MOXA logo is a registered trademark of Moxa Inc. All other trademarks or registered marks in this manual belong to their respective manufacturers.

## Disclaimer

- Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Moxa.
- Moxa provides this document as is, without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, its particular purpose. Moxa reserves the right to make improvements and/or changes to this manual, or to the products and/or the programs described in this manual, at any time.
- Information provided in this manual is intended to be accurate and reliable. However, Moxa assumes no
  responsibility for its use, or for any infringements on the rights of third parties that may result from its
  use.
- This product might include unintentional technical or typographical errors. Changes are periodically
  made to the information herein to correct such errors, and these changes are incorporated into new
  editions of the publication.

## **Technical Support Contact Information**

www.moxa.com/support

# **Table of Contents**

1.	Introduction	6
	Overview	6
	Package Checklist	6
	Features	6
	Defend Against Malicious Threats With Advanced Cybersecurity Features	7
	Simplify Configurations With the User-friendly Interface and Quick Settings	
	Industrial-grade Design to Ensure Uninterrupted Network Connectivity	
	Virtual Patching and Intelligent Threat Protection	
2.	Getting Started	
	RS-232 Console Configuration (115200, None, 8, 1, VT100)	
	Using Telnet to Access the Industrial Secure Router's Console	
	Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Secure Router	
3.	Device Summary and Setup Wizard	
•	Function Introduction	
	Device Summary	
	Model Information	
	Panel Status	
	Event Summary (Last 3 Days)	
	CPU Usage History (%)	
	Memory Usage History (%)	
	Setup Wizard	
	Step 1: Port Type	
	Step 2: Interface	
	Step 3: Service	
	Step 4: Confirm	
4.	System	
	System Management	
	Information Settings	27
	Firmware Upgrade	
	Software Package Management	30
	Configuration Backup and Restore	32
	Account Management	37
	User Accounts	37
	Password Policy	
	License Management	
	Management Interface	
	User Interface	
	Hardware Interface	
	SNMP	
	MXsecurity	
	Time	
	System Time	
	NTP/SNTP Server	
	,	
F	Setting Check	
5.	Network Configuration	
	Ports	
	Port Settings	
	Link Aggregation	
	Layer 2 Switching	
	VLAN	
	MAC Address Table	
	QoS	
	Rate Limiting	81
	Multicast	82
	Network Interface	88
	LAN	88
	WAN	90
	Bridge Group Interface	

	Secondary IP	
6.	Redundancy	
	Layer 2 Redundancy	
	Spanning Tree	
	Turbo Ring V2	
	Layer 3 Redundancy	
	VRRP	
7.	Network Service	
	DHCP Server	
	General Settings	
	DHCP	
	MAC-based IP Assignment	
	Port-based IP Assignment	
	Lease Table	
	Dynamic DNS	
8.	Routing	
	Unicast Route	
	Static Routes	
	RIP (Routing Information Protocol)	
	OSPF (Dynamic Routing With Open Shortest Path First)	
	Multicast Route	
	Multicast Route Settings	
	Static Multicast Route	
_	Broadcast Forwarding	
9.	NAT (Network Address Translation)	
	NAT Concept	
	1-to-1 NAT Overview	
	1-to-1 NAT.	
	NAT Loopback Bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT	
	Double NAT	
	N-to-1 NAT	
	PAT (Port Address Translation)	
	Advance	
10.	Object Management	
	Overview	. 150
	Create a New Object	. 150
	Create an IP Address and Subnet Object	. 151
	Create a Network Service Object	. 153
	Create an Industrial Application Service Object	. 155
	Create a User-defined Service Object	. 156
	Modify an Existing Object	. 159
	Delete an Object	. 159
	Search for an Object	
11.	Firewall	
	Policy Concept	
	Layer 2 Policy	
	Create a New Layer 2 Policy	
	Layer 3 - 7 Policy	
	Create a New Layer 3 - 7 Policy	
	Malformed Packets	
	Session Control	
	DoS (Denial of Service) Policy	
	Advanced Protection	
	Dashboard	
	Configuration Protocol Filter Policy	
	ADP (Anomaly Detection & Protection)	
	IPS (Intrusion Prevention System)	
12.	VPN (Virtual Private Network)	
	Overview	

	IPsec Configuration	206
	Global Settings	206
	IPsec Settings	207
	IPsec Use Case Demonstration	
	IPsec Status	
	L2TP Server (Layer 2 Tunnel Protocol)	
	L2TP Server Setting (WAN)	
	L2TP User Name Settings	
	Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Pre-Shared Key	
	Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Juniper systems	
	Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Cisco systems	
12	L2TP for Remote User Maintenance	
13.	Certificate Management	
	Local Certificate	
	Import a Certificate	
	Import a Certificate From CSR	
	Import a Certificate from PKCS#12	
	Trusted CA Certificate	227
	Import a CA Certificate	227
	Certificate Signing Request	227
	Key Pair Generate	228
	CSR Generate	229
14.	Security	231
	Device Security	231
	Login Policy	232
	Trusted Access	233
	SSH & SSL	
	Network Security	
	IEEE 802.1X	
	RADIUS	
	MXview Alert Notification	
	Security Notification Setting	
	Security Status	
15.	Diagnostics	
	System Status	
	Utilization	
	Fiber Check	
	Network Status	246
	Network Statistics	246
	LLDP	251
	ARP Table	252
	Event Logs and Notifications	252
	Event Log	253
	Event Notifications	257
	Syslog	263
	SNMP Trap/Inform	
	Email Settings	
	Tools	
	Port Mirror	
	Ping	
Α.	MIB Groups	
А. В.	Account Privileges List	
υ.	User Role Privileges	

Welcome to the Moxa EDR-G9010 Industrial Secure Router Series. These all-in-one Firewall/NAT/VPN secure routers are designed for connecting Ethernet-enabled devices with network IP security.

# **Overview**

As the world's network and information technology becomes more mature, the trend is to use Ethernet as the major communications interface in many industrial communications and automation applications. In fact, an entirely new industry has sprung up to provide Ethernet products that comply with the requirements of demanding industrial applications.

Moxa's Industrial Secure Router series is a Gigabit speed, all-in-one Firewall/VPN/Router for Ethernet security applications in sensitive remote control and monitoring networks.

The Quick Automation Profile function of the Industrial Secure Router's firewall supports most common Fieldbus protocols, including EtherCAT, EtherNet/IP, FOUNDATION Fieldbus, Modbus/TCP, and PROFINET. Users can easily create a secure Ethernet Fieldbus network from a user-friendly web UI with a single click. In addition, wide temperature models are available that operate reliably in hazardous, -40 to 75°C environments.

The EDR-G9010 Series is a set of highly integrated industrial multi-port secure routers with firewall/NAT/VPN and managed Layer 2 switch functions. These devices are designed for Ethernet-based security applications in critical remote control or monitoring networks. These secure routers provide an electronic security perimeter to protect critical cyber assets including substations in power applications, pump-and-treat systems in water stations, distributed control systems in oil and gas applications, and PLC/SCADA systems in factory automation.

# **Package Checklist**

The Industrial Secure Routers are shipped with the following items. If any of these items are missing or damaged, please contact your customer service representative for assistance.

- 1 Moxa Industrial Secure Router
- USB-C-to-DB9 cable
- Protective caps for unused ports
- DIN-rail mounting kit (attached to the Industrial Secure Router's rear panel by default)
- Quick installation guide (printed)
- Warranty card

# Features

- 10-port Gigabit all-in-one firewall/NAT/VPN/router/switch
- Industrial-grade Intrusion Prevention/Detection System (IPS/IDS)
- Visualize OT security with the MXsecurity management software
- Secure remote access tunnel with VPN
- Examine industrial protocol data with Deep Packet Inspection (DPI) technology
- Easy network setup with Network Address Translation (NAT)
- RSTP/Turbo Ring redundant protocol enhances network redundancy
- Security features based on IEC 62443/NERC CIP
- Supports secure boot for checking system integrity
- -40 to 75°C operating temperature range (-T model)

# **Defend Against Malicious Threats With Advanced Cybersecurity Features**

The EDR-G9010 Series' embedded firewall uses policy rules to control network traffic between trusted zones while Network Address Translation (NAT) shields the internal network from unauthorized access by outside hosts. The Virtual Private Networking (VPN) functionality further provides users with secure communication tunnels when accessing the private network from the public Internet. To help protect your OT assets from cyberattacks, the EDR-G9010 Series supports Deep Packet Inspection (DPI) to examine the data portion of network packets for various OT-specific protocols.

# Simplify Configurations With the User-friendly Interface and Quick Settings

The EDR-G9010 Series' "Interface Type Quick Settings" provide an easy way for users to set up WAN, LAN, and Bridge ports for routing functionality in just four steps. In addition, the "Quick Automation Profile" feature gives engineers a simple way to configure the firewall filtering function for general automation protocols, including EtherNet/IP, Modbus TCP, EtherCAT, FOUNDATION Fieldbus, and PROFINET.

# Industrial-grade Design to Ensure Uninterrupted Network Connectivity

The EDR-G9010 Series' rugged hardware makes these secure routers ideal for harsh industrial environments, featuring wide-temperature models that are built to operate reliably in hazardous conditions and extreme temperatures of -40 up to 75°C. Moreover, the EDR-G9010 Series supports comprehensive Layer 2 and Layer 3 redundancy mechanisms to ensure that your network stays connected at all times.

# Virtual Patching and Intelligent Threat Protection

Patching remains a major challenge in OT environments because OT applications cannot afford interrupting operations by shutting down systems to apply patches. Virtual patching technology can help complement existing patch management processes by shielding known and unknown vulnerabilities. In addition, the EDR-G9010 features intelligent IPS functionality for continuous protection against cyberthreats which uses pattern-based detection to identify and block known attacks.

This chapter explains how to access the Industrial Secure Router for the first time. There are three ways to access the router: (1) serial console, (2) Telnet console, and (3) web browser. The serial console connection method, which requires using a short serial cable to connect the Industrial Secure Router to a PC's COM port, can be used if you do not know the Industrial Secure Router's IP address. The Telnet console and web browser connection methods can be used to access the Industrial Secure Router over an Ethernet LAN, or over the Internet. A web browser can be used to perform all monitoring and administration functions, but the serial console and Telnet console only provide basic functions.

# RS-232 Console Configuration (115200, None, 8, 1, VT100)



### ATTENTION

We strongly suggest that you do NOT use more than one connection method at the same time. Following this advice will allow you to maintain better control over the configuration of your Industrial Secure Router.



#### NOTE

We recommend using Moxa PComm Terminal Emulator, which can be downloaded free of charge from Moxa's website.

Before running PComm Terminal Emulator, use a USB-C-to-DB9-F (or USB-C-to-DB25-F) cable to connect the Industrial Secure Router's RS-232 console port to your PC's COM port (generally COM1 or COM2, depending on how your system is set up).

After installing PComm Terminal Emulator, perform the following steps to access the RS-232 console utility.

1. From the Windows desktop, click Start > Moxa > PComm Terminal Emulator.



2. Click **Open** in the Port Manager menu to open a new connection.

📲 PCo	omm Terminal Er	mulator						_	Х
Profile	Port Manager	Help							
	Open	Ctrl+Alt+O	C 2B HEX						

- The Communication Parameter page of the Property window will appear. Select the appropriate COM port from the Serial Parameters list and configure the following values: Baud Rate: 115200
  - Data Bits: 8, Parity: None Stop Bits: 1.

Property			×
Communication Para	meter Terminal	File Transfer	Capturing
Protoc	1	-	]
COM1	Baud rate:	115200	•
		🔲 User defin	ned
	Data bits:	8	•
	Parity:	None	-
	Stop bits:	1	•
	Flow control:	TRTS/CTS	
		T XON/XOF	
	RTS state:	⊙ ON _ C (	DFF
	DTR state:	⊙ ON _ C (	DFF
Default		OK	Cancel

4. Click the **Terminal** tab, select **VT100** for Terminal Type, then click **OK** to continue.

Property	×
Communication Parameter Terminal File Transfer Capturing	
Terminal type: VT100 V Window Size Size: 80 X 25 (col x row) History depth: 25 (unit: row) Transmit Local echo Send 'Enter' key as: CR-LF	
Receive	
CR translation: No Changed	
LF translation: No Changed 💌	
✓ Enable auto line wrap	
Default OK Cancel	

5. The Console screen will appear. Press Enter to input the login account (admin or user) and press Enter again to jump to the Password field. Enter the console password, or if no password has been configured before, enter the default password "moxa" and press Enter.

🚡 COM2, 115200, None, 8, 1, VT100		
login: admin Password:	MOXA EDR-G9010-VPN-2MGSFP Series V2.0 build 22070117	•
Firewall/VPN Router		
State:OPEN CTO DOR RI DOD Rea	dy TX:12 RX:237	1

6. Enter a question mark (?) to display the command list.

	55140	
Firewall/VPN Route:		
quit	- Exit Command Line Interface	
exit	<ul> <li>Exit Command Line Interface</li> </ul>	
reload	- Halt and Perform a Cold Restart	
terminal	- Configure Terminal Page Length	
copy	- Import or Export File	
config-file	- configuration file	
no	<ul> <li>Negate a command or set its defaults</li> </ul>	
package	<ul> <li>Control package install/upgrade/uninstall</li> </ul>	
save	- Save Running Configuration to Local Storage	
ping	- Send Echo Messages	
clear	- Clear Information	
show	- Show System Information	
configure	- Enter Configuration Mode	
sslcertgen	- Generate SSL certificate.	
sshkeygen	- Generate SSH host key.	
Firewall/VPN Route:		

The following table lists the commands that can be used when the Industrial Secure Router is in console (serial or Telnet) mode:

#### **Admin Account Commands**

Command	Description
quit	Exit the Command Line Interface
exit	Exit the Command Line Interface
reload	Halt and perform a cold restart
terminal	Configure the terminal page length
сору	Import or export a file
config-file	Configure a file
no Negate a command or reset to its default	
save	Save the running configuration to flash
ping	Send echo messages
tcpdump	Dump traffic on a network
clear	Clear information
show	Show system information
configure Enter Configuration Mode	
sslcertgen	Generate a SSL certificate
sshkeygen	Generate a SSH host key

# Using Telnet to Access the Industrial Secure Router's Console

You may use Telnet to access the Industrial Secure Router's console utility over a network. To access the EDR's functions over the network (by either Telnet or a web browser) from a PC host that is connected to the same LAN as the Industrial Secure Router, you need to make sure that the PC host and the Industrial Secure Router are on the same logical subnet. To do this, check your PC host's IP address and subnet mask. By default, the LAN IP address is 192.168.127.254 and the Industrial subnet mask is 255.255.255.0 (for a Class C subnet). If you do not change these values, and your PC host's subnet mask is 255.255.0.0, then its IP address must have the form 192.168.xxx.xxx. On the other hand, if your PC host's subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.0, then its IP address must have the form, 192.168.127.xxx.

# NOTE

To use the Industrial Secure Router's management and monitoring functions from a PC host connected to the same LAN as the Industrial Secure Router, you must make sure that the PC host and the Industrial Secure Router are connected to the same logical subnet.

## NOTE

Before accessing the console utility via Telnet, first connect one of the Industrial Secure Router's RJ45 Ethernet LAN ports to your Ethernet LAN, or directly to your PC's Ethernet card (NIC). You can use either a straight-through or cross-over Ethernet cable.



### NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router's default LAN IP address is 192.168.127.254.

Perform the following steps to access the console utility via Telnet.

1. Click Start > Windows System > Run from the Windows desktop.



2. Enter "telnet 192.168.127.254" and click **OK** to connect to the Industrial Secure Router's IP address. You may also issue the Telnet command from the MS-DOS prompt.

🖅 Run	×
Ø	Type the name of a program, folder, document, or Internet resource, and Windows will open it for you.
Open:	telnet 192.168.127.254 🗸
	OK Cancel Browse

 The Console login screen will appear. Enter the login account (admin or user) and press Enter to jump to the Password field. Enter the console password, or if no password has been configured before, enter the default password "moxa" and press Enter.



4. Enter a question mark (?) to display the command list.

🗾 Telnet 192.168.127.254		_	$\times$
Firewall/VPN Router	55149#		
quit	- Exit Command Line Interface		
exit	– Exit Command Line Interface		
reload	– Halt and Perform a Cold Restart		
terminal	– Configure Terminal Page Length		
сору	- Import or Export File		
config-file	- configuration file		
no	– Negate a command or set its defaults		
package	- Control package install/upgrade/uninstall		
save	- Save Running Configuration to Local Storage		
ping	- Send Echo Messages		
clear	- Clear Information		
show	– Show System Information		
configure	- Enter Configuration Mode		
sslcertgen	- Generate SSL certificate.		
sshkevgen	– Generate SSH host key.		
Firewall/VPN Router			

# Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Secure Router

The Industrial Secure Router's web browser interface provides a convenient way to modify the router's configuration and access the built-in monitoring and network administration functions. The recommended web browser is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 with JVM (Java Virtual Machine) installed.



#### NOTE

To use the Industrial Secure Router's management and monitoring functions from a PC host connected to the same LAN as the Industrial Secure Router, you must make sure that the PC host and the Industrial Secure Router are connected to the same logical subnet.

## NOTE

Before accessing the Industrial Secure Router's web browser, first connect one of the Industrial Secure Router's RJ45 Ethernet LAN ports to your Ethernet LAN, or directly to your PC's Ethernet card (NIC). You can use either a straight-through or cross-over Ethernet cable.

# NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router's default LAN IP address is 192.168.127.254.

Perform the following steps to access the Industrial Secure Router's web browser interface.

1. Open a web browser and type the Industrial Secure Router's LAN IP address (**192.168.127.254**) in the address bar and press **Enter**.



 The web login page will open. Enter the username (Admin or User) and password (the same as the Console password) and click LOG IN to continue. Enter the default password "moxa" if a password has not been set yet.



You may need to wait a few moments for the web interface to appear. If you have logged in before, a system message will appear showing the details of the last successful login. Click **CLOSE** to close this message.



After successfully connecting to the router, the Device Summary screen will automatically appear. Use the menu tree on the left side of the window to open the function pages to access each of the router's functions.



# 3. Device Summary and Setup Wizard

In this chapter, we explain how to access the Industrial Secure Router's configuration options, perform monitoring, and use administration functions. There are three ways to access these functions: (1) RS-232 console, (2) Telnet console, and (3) web browser.

The web browser is the most user-friendly way to configure the Industrial Secure Router since you can both monitor the Industrial Secure Router and use administration functions from the web browser. An RS-232 or Telnet console connection only provides basic functions. In this chapter, we use the web browser to introduce the Industrial Secure Router's configuration and monitoring functions.

# **Function Introduction**



- 1. Clicking  $\blacksquare$  in the top-left will close or expand the function menu.
- 2. Enter the name of a function in the **Search Bar** to quickly find a specific function.
- 3. Click on a function name in the Function Menu on the left-hand side to view or configure the function.
- 4. All the configuration options and information of the selected function will be shown here.
- 5. This shows the name of the logged in user.

6. Clicking in the top-right will expand the drop-down menu shown below.



#### Reboot



Click **RESTART** to reboot the Industrial Secure Router.

#### **Reset to Defaults**

Factory default
Are you sure you want to reset the system configurations to factory default?
Keep certificate database and configuration.
RESET CANCEL

The **Reset to Defaults** option gives users a quick way of restoring the Industrial Secure Router's configuration settings to their factory default values. This function is available in both the console utility (serial or Telnet) and the web browser interface.

Check the **Keep certificate database and configuration** option to keep certificate database and configuration information. Leaving this option unchecked will delete all information on the device and reset everything to its factory default value.

Click **RESET** to reset the Industrial Secure Router to the factory default settings. Be aware that all your configuration settings will be permanently deleted.

#### NOTE

After resetting the device, you will need to use the default network settings to re-establish a web-browser or Telnet connection to your Industrial Secure Router.

#### Log Out



Click **LOG OUT** to log out of the Industrial Secure Router.

# **Device Summary**

When logging in to the Industrial Secure Router, you will be presented with the **Device Summary** page. This overview page contains basic activity and performance information of the device. If you are on another configuration page, click **Device Summary** from the Function Menu to jump to the summary page.

	G9010-VPN-2MGSFP			Hi, admin
Search for a function	Device Summary			
Device Summary	Model Information		Panel Status	;
Setup Wizard	Product Model EDR-G9010-VPN-2MGSFP	MAC Address 00:90:e8:91:86:72		
System 🗸	Name Firewall/VPN Router 55149	Serial Number TB2KB1155149	PWR1 PWR2 STATE MSTR/H.TC	CPLR/T.TC VPN VRRP/HA USB
Network Configuration 🗸	Location Device Location	Firmware Version V2.0 build 22070117	1	9
Redundancy 🗸 🗸	LAN IP Address	System Uptime	Link Up Ports	Link Down Ports
Network Service 🗸 🗸	192.168.127.254 WAN P Address	0d1h19m38s	Link op Porta	LINE DOWNPOILS
Routing. 🗸 🗸	0.000			EXPAND
NAT				
Object Management				
Firewall 🗸	Event Summary (Last 3 days)		CPU Usage History (%)	2022/07/06 09:17:06
/PN 🗸				
	0	0	90	
Certificate Management 🛛 🗸	Critical	Error	80.	
Security 🗸	Gillen		70	
Disgnostics 🗸 🗸			00 10	
	0	0	40	
	Warning	Notice	20	
			10	
		View All Event Logs ->	0	
			00/15/36 09/16/36 03/16/36 09/16/36	09:15:36 09:19:36 09:17:06 09:17:06 09:17
	Memory Usage History (%)	2022/07/06 09:17:06 C		
	100			
	90			
	70			
	60			
	50			
	40 30			
	20			
	10			

See the following sections for a more detailed description of each widget on the summary page.

# **Model Information**

This panel shows basic information for the Industrial Secure Router, including product model name, serial number, firmware version, system uptime, etc.

Product Model	MAC Address	
EDR-G9010-VPN-2MGSFP	00:90:e8:91:86:72	
Name	Serial Number	
Firewall/VPN Router 55149	TBZKB1155149	
Location	Firmware Version	
Device Location	V2.0 build 22070117	
LAN IP Address	System Uptime	
192.168.127.254	0d1h19m38s	
WAN IP Address		
0.0.0.0		

# **Panel Status**

This panel illustrates the panel status. For example, the connecting ports will be shown in green, while the disconnected ports will be shown in gray. Click **EXPAND**  $\checkmark$  to view more detailed information. Click **COLLAPSE**  $\land$  to hide the details.

	PWR2	STATE	MSTR/ H.TC	CPLR/ T.TC	VPN	VRRP/ HA	USB
	1					9	
	Link Up	Ports			Link D	own Ports	
						E	XPAND 🗸
anel Stat	tus						K 7 K 3
PWR1	PWR2	STATE	MSTR/ H.TC	CPLR/ T.TC	VPN	VRRP/ HA	USB
	1					9	
	Link Up	Ports			Link D	own Ports	
ort				•		•	
•	•	•	•	_			8
•	2	3	4	5	6 (LAN)	7 (LAN)	(LAN)
1 (LAN)	2 (LAN)	-	_	_	6 (LAN)	(LAN)	(LAN)
•	2	3	4	5			(LAN)
1 (LAN)	2 (LAN)	3	4	5			(LAN)

### **Panel View**

Click the  $\sum_{i=1}^{n}$  icon in the Panel Status widget to view the device port status on a representative image of the device. Click the  $\times$  icon in the upper-right corner to close the panel view. The panel view figure varies depending on the product model you are using.



# Event Summary (Last 3 Days)

This panel shows the event summary for the past three days.



Click View All Event Logs  $\rightarrow$  to go to the Event Log page, where you can view all event logs in more detail.

Ev	ent Lo	og						
	System L	og	Firewall	Log	VPN Log	Threshold Settings	Backup	
	C 🗊	-						
	Index	Timesta	mp	Severity	Additional message			
	1	1970/1/:	3 11:34:4+8:00	Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	52, Startup=0d0h48m16s	
	2	1970/1/3 11:33:58		Emergency	Auth Fail Account=adr	nin ,Bootup=52, Startup=0d	0h48m10s	
	3	1970/1/3 11:26:59		Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	52, Startup=0d0h41m11s	
	4	1970/1/3	3 10:46:8+8:00	Emergency	Power Transition (Off	-> On) Power 2 ,Bootup=52,	Startup=0d0h0m19s	
	5	1970/1/3	3 10:46:7+8:00	Emergency	Warm Start Factory De	efault ,Bootup=52, Startup=0	OdOhOm18s	
	б	1970/1/3 10:45:57		Emergency	Link On Port 1 ,Bootup	=52, Startup=0d0h0m8s		
	7	1970/1/; 10:44:46		Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	51, Startup=0d4h38m55s	
	8	1970/1/3 10:30:48		Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	s Account=admin ,Bootup=	51, Startup=0d4h24m58s	

For Event Log settings, refer to the Event Log section.

# CPU Usage History (%)

This panel shows the device's CPU usage. The data will be shown as a percentage over time. Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the graph.



# Memory Usage History (%)

This panel shows the device's memory usage. The data will be shown as a percentage over time. Click the

 ${f C}$  icon to refresh the graph.



# **Setup Wizard**

The EDR-G9010 Series supports a Setup Wizard to help you quickly set up routing functionality between the user-defined LAN, WAN, and Bridge ports.

# Step 1: Port Type

......

Select the port type (LAN, WAN, Bridge) for each port from the corresponding drop-down menu.

MOXA	1 Port Typ	e	🖉 In	terface	🕗 Service	🕜 Confi
USB	G2					
PWR1	LAN					
	-					
GZ LAN CPLR/T.TC	G1					
VRRP/HA	LAN			-		
G1 LAN	-					
	Port 7		Port 8			
• 14/2.50 RESET	WAN	*	Bridge	*		
BP 17	Port 5		Port 6			
•7	LAN	*	Bridge			
6. LAN BR						
6. •5	Port 3		Port 4			
LAN	LAN	*	LAN	*		
4.3						
LAN	Port 1		Port 2			
2.	LAN	¥	LAN	*		
EDR-G9010-VPN-2MGSFF						
4						

# Step 2: Interface

Setup Wizard				
MOXA	Port Type	2 Interface	Service	🖉 Confirm
USB 10/256 PWR2 STATE STATE	LAN IP Configuration IP Address * 192.168.127.254	Subnet Mask * 24 (255.255.255.0)	<b>•</b>	
G2 LAN CPLR/T.TC VREP/HA II VPN II US8 II US8 II	Bridge IP Configuration	Subnet Mask *		
• 15/236 RESET	USAN Configuration	24 (255.255.255.0)	•	
S S	Connect Type Dynamic IP			
	PPTP Dialup PPTP Connection			
T EDR-69010-VPN-2MCSEP	IP Address	Username 0/	Password	<b>Q</b> 0/31
	BACK			

#### LAN IP Configuration

Configure the LAN IP address to define the subnet of the LAN ports on the secure router. The default IP address on the LAN side is 192.168.127.254, and the default subnet address is 255.255.255.0.

#### **Bridge IP Configuration**

Configure the Bridge LAN Interface IP address to define the subnet of the Bridge LAN ports on the secure router. The default IP address on the Bridge LAN side is 192.168.126.254, and the default subnet address is 255.255.255.0.

#### **WAN Configuration**

Configure the WAN port type to define how the secure router connects to the WAN.

Connect Type		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Dynamic IP	Get the WAN IP address from a DHCP server or via a PPTP	
	connection.	
Static IP	Specify a static WAN IP address or create a connection to a	Dynamic IP
	PPTP server with a specific IP address.	
PPPoE	Get the WAN IP address via PPPoE Dialup.	

#### Dynamic IP

Connect Type		
Dynamic IP	*	
PPTP Dialup		
PPTP Dialup PPTP Conn	ection	
PPTP Dialup	ection	

Static IP

AN Configuration Connect Type Static IP			
Address Information	-		
IP Address *	Gateway *	Subnet Mask * 24 (255.255.255.0)	
Required	Required		
PPTP Dialup			
PPTP Connection			
IP Address	Username	Password	ø
	0/31		0/3

#### PPPoE

AN Configuration				
PPPoE	<b>•</b>			
PPPoE Dialup				
Username *	Password *	ø	Host Name *	
Required	Required		Required	

# **Step 3: Service**

Use the toggle buttons to enable or disable the corresponding services. The **Enable DHCP Server** and **Enable N-1 NAT** are enabled by default. The default IP address range will be set automatically. To modify the IP range, refer to the <u>DHCP Server</u> section.

#### Setup Wizard мохл 🕜 Confirm / Interface 3 Service 🖉 Port Type Enable DHCP Server at LAN Interface PWR1 . 16/256 PWR2 Offered IP Range From 192.168.127.1 to 192.168.127.253 STATE Enable N-1 NAT for LAN Interface to WAN G2 CPLR/T.TC IP Range From 192.168.127.1 to 192.168.127.254 VPN Enable DHCP Server at Bridge Interface USB G1 Offered IP Range From 192.168.126.1 to 192.168.126.253 RESET Enable N-1 NAT for Bridge Interface to WAN @ 16/25G IP Range From 192.168.126.1 to 192.168.126.254 8. 6+ +5 4 BACK NEXT EDR

# Step 4: Confirm

Click **APPLY** to apply the settings or click **BACK** to modify the settings.

Setup Wizard				
	Port Type	🖉 Interface	Service	4 Confirm
e 167.35 PWR1 PWR2 STATE G2 LAN VRP/HA USB 167.35 RESET B- T G1 LAN B- T B- T C LAN B- B- T B- T C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Before applying, plea	se check your configuration.		
LAN LAN LAN LAN CONSTRUCTION	BACK APPLY			



## NOTE

The settings configured in the Setup Wizard will override any existing configuration.

The **System** section includes the most common settings required by administrators to maintain and control the Moxa Industrial Secure Router.

From the System menu, you can access the System Management, Account Management, License Management, Management Interface, Time, and Setting Check configuration pages.



# System Management

From the System Management menu, the following functions can be configured: Information Settings, Firmware Upgrade, Software Package Management, and Configure Backup and Restore.



# **Information Settings**

The **Information Settings** screen lets you edit the basic device information to make it easier to identify the device on the network.

Device Name Firewall/VPN Router 55149	
	25 / 30
Location	
Device Location	
	15/80
Description	
	0 / 40
Contact Information	
	0 / 40

#### Device Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter a name for the device. This is useful for differentiating between the roles or applications of different units on the network. For example, "Factory Router 1".	Firewall/VPN Router
Location		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 80 characters	Enter a location for the device. This is useful for quickly identifying the location of different units. For example, "Production line 1".	Device Location
Description		_
Setting	Description	Factory Default

#### Contact Information

Max. 40 characters

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max 40 characters	Enter the contact information for the person in charge of the device. This is useful for providing information on who is responsible for maintaining this unit and how to contact this person.	None

Enter a description for the device.

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

None

# **Firmware Upgrade**

There are three ways to update your Moxa router's firmware: from a local \*.rom file, by remote TFTP server, and via a USB tool.

#### Local

Select Local from the drop-down list under Method.

ethod *		
ocal	•	
elect File *		

#### Select File

Before performing the firmware upgrade, download the firmware (\*.rom) file from the Moxa website (<u>www.moxa.com</u>).

Click C to select the firmware file stored locally on the host computer. With the firmware selected, click **UPGRADE** to start the upgrade process. This procedure will take several minutes to complete.

#### **TFTP Server**

Select **TFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

Firmware Up	gra	de
Method TFTP	•	
Server IP Address *	2	File Name *
UPGRADE		

#### Server IP Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the TFTP server where the target firmware file (*.rom) is located.	None
File Name		

i ne manne		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Firmware file name	Enter the file name of the target firmware file.	None

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to start the firmware upgrade process.

#### USB

On large-scale networks, administrators need to configure many network devices. This is a time-consuming process and errors often occur. By using Moxa's Automatic Backup Configurator (ABC-02), the administrator can easily duplicate the system configurations across many systems in a short period of time.

Administrators only need to set up the configuration in a system once including the firewall rules and certificates and export the configuration file to the ABC-02. Then, the administrator can plug the ABC-02-USB into other systems to sync the configuration of these devices with the configuration files stored in the ABC-02-USB. For more details about the ABC-02-USB, please visit: https://www.moxa.com/product/Automatic Backup Configurator ABC-02-USB.htm

#### Moxa's Automatic Backup Configurator (ABC-02-USB)



To use the Moxa USB-based ABC-02 configuration tool to upgrade the firmware, connect the ABC-02-USB to the router and select **USB** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

# Firmware Upgrade

Method USB	•	
Select File *		Ē
UPGRADE		

#### Select File

Before performing the firmware upgrade, download the firmware (\*.rom) file from the Moxa website (<u>www.moxa.com</u>).

Click Click



#### NOTE

The ABC-02 USB is an optional accessory and must be purchased separately.



#### NOTE

If you have difficulties using the ABC-02 configuration tool, check if the USB Function has been enabled in the <u>Hardware Interface</u> section.

# Software Package Management

The Industrial Secure Router supports two package types: a **Network Security Package** and a **MXsecurity Agent Package**. You can install or upgrade these packages to expand the security features of the Industrial Secure Router with advanced functions.

Network Secu	rity Package	ĺ.	
Status Enabled			
Source *	Ŧ		
MXsecurity Ag	gent Packag	9	
	gent Packag	9	

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled	The package is installed and is working normally.	
Disabled	The package is installed but was abnormally terminated.	Enabled
Uninstalled	No package is installed.	

#### Source

Select the source for installing or upgrading the security package. There are two ways to install or upgrade security packages: using a local file or through a firmware file. Refer to the following sections.

#### Local

Before performing the package upgrade, download the package (\*.pkg) file from the Moxa website (<u>www.moxa.com</u>).

Network Secu	irity Packa	ge	
Status Enabled			
Source *			
Local	*	Select File *	<b>D</b>
UPGRADE			
UPGRADE MXsecurity A	gent Pack	age	
MXsecurity A	gent Pack	age	
	gent Pack	age	

#### Source

Select Local from the drop-down menu under Source to update an existing package using a local file.

#### Select File

Click Click

#### Firmware

This requires the firmware containing the package file is already installed on the device. Refer to the <u>Firmware Upgrade</u> section on how to install firmware.

Network Secur	ity Package
Status Enabled	
Source *	Package Version
Firmware	▼ 5.0.16
	• 3.0.10
UPGRADE	
UPGRADE	
UPGRADE MXsecurity Ag Status	

#### Source

Select Firmware from the drop-down menu under Source to install or update a package through firmware.

#### Package Version

This shows the target firmware version. Click **UPGRADE** to start the upgrade process. This procedure will take several minutes to complete.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

#### Backup

From the **Backup** screen, you can export the device's configuration.

miguratio	on Backup an	u Restore
Backup	Restore	File Encryption
Aethod *		
ocal	*	

There are three ways to back up the configuration of your Industrial Secure Router: to the local host computer, to a remote TFTP server, or to a Moxa ABC-02 USB tool.

#### Local

Select **Local** from the drop-down list under **Method**, then click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file to the local host machine.

#### TFTP

Select **TFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

# Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup	Restore	File Encryption	
Method TFTP	<b>-</b>		
Server IP Address *	File Name *		
BACK UP			

#### Server IP Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the TFTP server.	None

#### File Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Backup file name	Enter the file name of the configuration backup file.	None

When finished, click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file.

#### USB

Select **USB** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

## **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup	Restore	File Encryption	
Method USB	•		
BACK UP			

Insert the Moxa ABC-02 USB-based configuration tool into the USB port of the Industrial Secure Router and click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file to the tool.



### ΝΟΤΕ

If you have difficulties using the ABC-02 configuration tool, check if the **USB Function** has been enabled in the <u>Hardware Interface</u> section.

#### **Auto Backup of Configurations**

To enable automatic configuration backups, select **Enabled** from the drop-down list. Click **APPLY** to have the device automatically back up the system configuration.

nfigurations

#### Restore

From the **Restore** screen, you can restore the device's configuration using a previously back up configuration file.

Backup	Restore	File Encryption
•d *		
L		
ct File *		

There are three ways to restore the configurations of your Industrial Secure Router: from a local configuration file, by remote TFTP server, or using a Moxa ABC-02 USB tool.

#### Local

Select Local from the drop-down list under Method

#### Select File

Click C to select a configuration file stored locally on the host computer. With the configuration file selected, click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration. This procedure will take several minutes to complete.

#### TFTP

Select **TFTP** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

Configuration Backup and Restore			
Backup	Restore	File Encryption	
Method * TFTP	•		
Server IP Address *	File Name *		
RESTORE			

Server	IP	Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Enter the IP address of the TFTP server.	None

File Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Configuration file name	Enter the file name of the configuration restore file.	None

When finished, click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration.

#### USB

Select **USB** from the drop-down list under **Method**.

# **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup	Restore	File Encryption
Method USB	-	
Select File *		
RESTORE		

Insert the Moxa ABC-02 USB-based configuration tool into the USB port of the Industrial Secure Router and click **RESTORE** to restore the system configuration.



#### NOTE

If you have difficulties using the ABC-02 configuration tool, check if the **USB Function** has been enabled in the <u>Hardware Interface</u> section.

#### **Auto Backup of Configurations**

To enable automatic configuration restoration, select **Enabled** from the drop-down list and click **APPLY** to have the device automatically restore the system configuration.

Auto Backup o	of Configurations
Automatically Restore	÷ *
Enabled	-
APPLY	

### **File Encryption**

You can export the configuration as an encrypted text-based (command line type) configuration file and specify an encryption key string. The key string is also used for decrypting when importing an encrypted configuration file.

# **Configuration Backup and Restore**

Backup	Restore	File Encryptic
Configuration File Signature	e.	
Disabled		*
Signature Information *		
Encrypt sensitive info	crypt sensitive information only	
Key String *		
		4/31

#### **Configuration File Signature**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enables or disables the use of a digital signature for checking the configuration file integrity.	None

#### Signature Information

Setting	Description	Factory Default
<i>,</i> ,	Only encrypt password-related sensitive information in the	Encrypt sensitive
information only	exported configuration file.	-information only
Encrypt all information	Encrypt all information in the exported configuration file.	

Key String		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IMAX 31 Characters	Enter an encryption key string. This key string is also used to decrypt encrypted configuration files.	moxa

When finished, click **Apply** to apply the changes.
# **Account Management**

Click **Account Management**, two functions can be configured under this section: **User Accounts**, and **Password Policy**.



# **User Accounts**

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's account management function allows you to create, manage, modify, and remove user accounts. There are three levels of configuration access: Admin, Supervisor, and User. The admin accounts have read/write access to all configuration parameters. Supervisors have full editing rights but cannot create, modify, or delete accounts. User-level accounts have read-only access and can only view configurations.

7	

### NOTE

- 1. We strongly recommend changing the default password after logging in for the first time.
- 2. The default 'admin' account cannot be deleted and is enabled by default.

lser Ac	counts			
٥				Q Search
	Status	Username	Authority	
	Enabled	admin	Admin	
• •	Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor	
• /	Enabled	user	User	
Max. 10				1 – 3 of 3

### **Create a New Account**

Click the 🖸 icon to create a new user account. Enter a username and password, assign the status and the authority to the new account, and click **CREATE**. Once created, the new account will appear in the Account List table.

Status *	•			
Username *				
At least 4 characters	0/31			
Authority *	•			
		Confirm Password	j *	
New Password *				

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled	The Industrial Secure Router can be accessed by this account.	
Disabled	The Industrial Secure Router cannot be accessed by this	None
Disableu	account.	

#### Username

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 31 characters	Enter a username for the account.	None

#### Authority

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Admin	The account has read/write access to all configuration	
Aumin	parameters.	
Supervisor	The account has read/write access to all configuration	None
Supervisor	parameters except create, delete, and modify accounts.	None
User	The account can only view configurations and cannot make	
User	any modifications.	

### NOTE

Refer to <u>User Role Privileges</u> for a detailed description of read/write access privileges for the admin, supervisor, and user authority levels.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 16 characters	Enter a password for the account.	None
Confirm Password		
Confirm Password Setting	Description	Factory Default

#### **Modify an Existing Account**

In the Account List table, click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the account you want to modify the account.

Edit Account S	ettings	1	
Status * Enabled	•		
Username USEF			
At least 4 characters	4/31		
Authority *			
User	•		
Old Password *			
At least 4 characters	0/16		
New Password *		Confirm Password	j *
At least 4 characters	0/16	At least 4 characters	0/16
			CANCE

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled	The Industrial Secure Router can be accessed by this account.	
Disabled	The Industrial Secure Router cannot be accessed by this account.	None

#### Username

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 31 characters	Enter a username for the account.	None

#### Authority

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Admin	The account has read/write access to all configuration	
Aumin	parameters.	
Supervisor	The account has read/write access to all configuration	None
Supervisor	parameters except create, delete, and modify accounts.	None
User	The account can only view configurations but cannot make	-
USEI	any modifications.	

#### Old Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 16 characters	If you want to change the account password, enter the current password of the account.	None

# New Password Setting Description

4 to 16 characters	Enter a new password for the account.	None

### Confirm Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 16 characters	Re-enter the new password for the account to confirm.	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Factory Default

#### **Delete an Existing Account**

To delete existing accounts, select one or multiple accounts from the Account List table and click the  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  icon.

### **User Accounts**

ĩ				<b>Q</b> Search	
	Status	Username	Authority		
• /	Enabled	admin	Admin		
• •	Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor		
<b>I</b>	Enabled	user	User		
Max. 10					1 – 3 of 3

Click **DELETE** to delete the account

Delete Account	
Are you sure you want to delete the sele account?	ected
CANCEL	DELETE

#### Search for an Existing Account

Enter the full or partial account username in the Search field. Any user accounts matching the search criteria will be shown in the Account List table.

Us	er Acc	ounts				
	0				Q ad	
		Status	Username	Authority		
		Enabled	admin	Admin		
		Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor		
	Max. 10					1 – 2 of 2

# **Password Policy**

Using the Password Policy function, administrators can force more complex login passwords to improve the overall security of the system. At the same time, administrators can configure an account login failure lockout time to avoid unauthorized users from gaining access.

# **Password Policy**

Minimum Length *	
4	
4 - 16	
Password complexity strength check	
Disabled	
third exclusion of least end wheth (0,0)	
Must contain at least one digit (0-9)	
Disabled	5.7
Must include both upper and lower case letters (A	4-Z, a-z)
Disabled	
Must contain at least one special character (~!@	#\$\$*&* ;_↔()[]())
Disabled	

#### Minimum Length

Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 16 characters	Enter the minimum required password length.	4
Password complexity	strength check	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the password complexity strength check.	Disabled
Must contain at least	one digit (0-9)	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the requirement of the password to contain at least one digit.	Disabled
Must include both up	per and lower case letters (A-Z, a-z)	1
• •		Factory Default
Must include both up Setting Enabled or Disabled	per and lower case letters (A-Z, a-z)	Factory Default
Setting Enabled or Disabled	per and lower case letters (A-Z, a-z) Description Enable or disable the requirement of the password to include	
Setting Enabled or Disabled	per and lower case letters (A-Z, a-z) Description Enable or disable the requirement of the password to include both upper- and lower-case letters.	

# License Management

The Industrial Secure Router supports additional software licenses to enable specific functions and services. To add a new license, you will need to activate the product license using a registration code.

Click the <u>Get New License Here</u> ink to go to the Moxa license management portal. Refer to the **Moxa Software License Portal User Manual** for more information on how to activate product licenses.

License M	lanagement					
	Name IPS-DEVICE Valid Durations (days) 11477	Start Date 2022-04-01 12:20:00 End Date 2053-12:08 02:07:00	Status Valid Get New License Here, 🖸			
License Histo				Q Search		
Update Date	Activation Code				License Duration (days)	License Type
1970-05-15 08:03:51			· • • • •		11574	New
						1-1 of 1

#### **Overview**

The Overview section displays the license name, the valid duration (in days), the start date, the end date, and the status of the current license.

#### **License History**

The license history section shows more detailed license information.

- Updated Date: The date when the license was updated by entering the activation code.
- License Duration: The duration the license is valid for (in days).
- License Type: The type of license.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the license information.

Enter the full or partial license number in the Search field. Any licenses matching the search criteria will be shown in the License List table.

#### Add a New License

Whenever a new Industrial Secure Router license is activated in the license management portal, the system will generate an activation code that can be used to activate the license on the Industrial Secure Router.

- 1. Go to System > License Management.
- 2. Click the **ADD NEW LICENSE** button in the Overview section.

The **Add New License** screen appears.

Add New License		
1	2	3
Login Moxa License Site	Copy Serial Number	Activate
<ol> <li>Login <u>Moxa License Site</u></li> <li>Choose "Activate a Product site.</li> <li>Key in the Registration Cod Number would be get at the n</li> </ol>	License" and product type "	, ,
		CLOSE NEXT

#### 3. Click Next.

4. Click the D icon to copy the serial number and store it somewhere where it can be easily copied from. Use the serial number to activate the license in the Moxa license management portal.

Add New License		
0	2	3
Login Moxa License Site	Copy Serial Number	Activate
Copy the Serial Number to N	1oxa License Site.	
Serial Number:		
	5 522	CLOSE NEXT

5. Click Next.

6. Enter the activation code from the email you have received after activating the license in the license management portal.

d New License		
	0	3
Login Moxa License Site	Copy Serial Number	Activate
Download the license from $\underline{\mathbb{N}}$	<b>Ioxa License Site</b> , and paste the	Activation Code here.
Activation Code		

7. Click **APPLY**.

The license is now activated on the Industrial Secure Router.

# **Management Interface**

From the **Management Interface** section, four functions can be configured: **User Interface, Hardware Interface, SNMP,** and **MXsecurity**.

Management Interface	^
User Interface	
Hardware Interface	
SNMP	
MXsecurity	

# **User Interface**

From the User Interface screen, users can configure which interfaces can be used to access the device.

# **User Interface**

HTTP	TCP Port (HTTP) *
Enabled	▼ 80
	2 - 65535
HTTPS	TCP Port (HTTPS) *
Enabled	✓ 443
	2 - 65535
Telnet	TCP Port (Telnet) *
Enabled	✓ 23
	2 - 65535
SSH	TCP Port (SSH) *
Enabled	<del>•</del> 22
	2 - 65535
Ping Response (WAN)	
Disabled	<b>~</b>
TCP Port for Moxa Servic 443	e (Encrypted)
UDP Port for Moxa Servic 40404	e (Encrypted)
40404	
40404 Maximum Number of Log	
40404 Maximum Number of Log 5 1 - 10	
40404 Maximum Number of Log 5 1 - 10	in Sessions for HTTP+HTTPS *
40404 Maximum Number of Log 5 1 - 10 Maximum Number of Log	in Sessions for HTTP+HTTPS *

#### HTTP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable HTTP connections.	Enabled
TCP Port (HTTP)		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
2 to 65535	Enter the TCP port number for HTTP.	80
HTTPS		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable HTTPS connections.	Enabled
TCP Port (HTTPS)		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
2 to 65535	Enter the TCP port number for HTTPS.	443

Telnet		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Telnet connections.	Enabled
TCP Port (Telnet)		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
2 to 65535	Enter the TCP port number for Telnet.	23
SSH		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable SSH connections.	Enabled
TCP Port (SSH)		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
2 to 65535	Enter the TCP port number for SSH.	22
Ping Response (WAI	v)	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	If a WAN connection has been established, enable this feature to have the WAN port respond to ping requests.	Disabled



## NOTE

To ping the WAN port, make sure the "Ping Response (WAN)" function is enabled, and the ping sender IP is in the Trusted Access list or the "Accept All LAN Port Connections" option is enabled in Trusted Access.

#### MOXA Service

MOXA Service			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the MOXA Service.	Enabled	

### ΝΟΤΕ

Moxa Service is only used for Moxa network management software.

TCP Port for Moxa Service (Encrypted)				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
443 (read only)	The TCP port number for Moxa Service.	443		
UDP Port for Moxa Service (Encrypted)				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
40404 (read only)	The UDP port number for Moxa Service.	40404		
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for HTTP+HTTTPS				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
1 to 10	Specify the maximum combined number of users that can be logged in to the Industrial Secure Router using HTTP and HTTPS. The maximum is 10.	5		
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for Telnet+SSH				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
1 to 5	Specify the maximum combined number of users that can be logged in to the Industrial Secure Router using Telnet and SSH. The maximum is 5.	5		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Hardware Interface**

The **Hardware Interface** allows you to enable or disable the USB interface, which is used by the Moxa ABC-02 configuration tool.

Hardware	Interface
USB Function Enabled	-
APPLY	

#### USB Function

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the USB function on the Industrial Secure	Enabled
	Router.	Enabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **SNMP**

The Industrial Secure Router supports SNMP V1/V2c/V3. SNMP V1 and SNMP V2c use a community string match for authentication, which means that SNMP servers access all objects with read-only permissions using the community string public (default value). SNMP V3, which requires the user to select MD5 or SHA authentication, is the most secure protocol. You can also enable data encryption to enhance data security.

SNMP security modes and security levels supported by the Industrial Secure Router are listed in the following table.

Protocol Version	UI Setting	Authentication Type	Data Encryption	Method
	V1, V2c Read Community	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication
SNMP V1, V2c	V1, V2c Write/Read Community	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
	None	No	No	Uses an account with admin or user to access objects.
SNMP V3	MD5 or SHA	Authentication based on MD5 or SHA	Disabled	Provides authentication based on HMAC-MD5, or HMAC-SHA algorithms. 8-character passwords are the minimum requirement for authentication.
	MD5 or SHA	Authentication based on MD5 or SHA	Data encryption key: DES, AES	Provides authentication based onHMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms, and data encryption key. 8-character passwords and a data encryption key are the minimum requirements for authentication and encryption.

# **General Settings**

The SNMP page is used to enable or disable SNMP. Depending on the selected SNMP version, additional configuration parameters will become available.

General	SNMP Account
NMP Version *	
isabled	· • •

#### SNMP Version

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled,		
V1, V2c, V3, or	Select the SNMP protocol version used to manage the secure	Disabled
V1, V2c, or	router.	Disabled
V3 only		

If you selected an SNMP version, configure the following settings:

General	S	NMP Account	
NMP Version *			
(1, V2c, V3	•	0	
Community Name 1 *		Access Control 1	
public		Read Only	•
Community Name 2 *	6/30	Access Control 2 *	
private		Read Write	v
	7/30		

#### *Community Name 1/2*

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 Characters	Use a community string match for authentication	public/private
Access Control 1/2		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Read only or	······································	Read Only/Read Write

# **SNMP** Account

The Industrial Secure Router comes with two preconfigured SNMP Accounts which are disabled by default.

General	SNMP Account	-		
			Q Search	
Status	Authority	Authentication Type	Encryption Method	
/ Disabled	Admin	MD5	DES	
/ Disabled	User	MD5	DES	

# Modify an Existing SNMP Account

In the SNMP Account list, click the 🖍 icon next to the SNMP account you want to modify.

Edit SNMP A	dmin Account	Settings	
Status			
Disabled			
		CANCEL	APPLY

Select **Enabled** from the Status drop-down menu and configure the following settings:

Edit SNMP Adm	nin Ac	count Settings		
Status Enabled	•			
Authentication Type * MD5	•			
Encryption Method * DES	•	Encryption Key *	ø	
5 5		At least 8 characters	0/29	
			CANCEL	APPLY

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 algorithms.	
MD5	8-character passwords are the minimum requirement for	
	authentication.	
	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-SHA algorithms.	MD5
SHA	8-character passwords are the minimum requirement for	
	authentication.	
None	Do not use any authentication.	
Encryption Met	hod	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Setting		
	Select an encryption method.	DES
DES/AES Encryption Key		DES

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

characters long.

# **MXsecurity**

Max. 29 Characters

The Industrial Secure Router supports management of firmware, software package, firewall policy, threat signature, and other functions through the MXsecurity centralized security management software.

Specify the encryption key. The key must be at least 8

None

### NOTE

To manage the EDR-G9010 functions through MXsecurity, the MXsecurity Agent Package must be installed and enabled first. Refer to the <u>Software Package Management</u> section for how to install the MXsecurity Agent Package.

1Xsecurity		
Connection Status		C
Status	Package Version	
Disconnected	1.0.0004	
Service Address	Profile Synchronization	
192.168.54.87		
New Connection		
Service Address		
	0 / 6.4	
00101507		
CONNECT		

#### **Connection Status**

This section shows the current connection status to MXsecurity, the installed MXsecurity Agent package version, and the profile sync status.

Click the **Refresh** ( $\mathbb{C}$ ) icon in the upper-right corner to refresh the connection status information.

#### Status

- Disconnected: Not connected to MXsecurity.
- Connected: A connection has been established with MXsecurity.
- Connecting: Connecting to MXsecurity.

#### Profile Synchronization

- ---: No synchronization data available.
- **Sync:** The EDR-G9010 and MXsecurity configurations are synced.
- Un-sync: MXsecurity has configuration changes that are not synced to the EDR-G9010 device.
- **Out-of-sync:** There are configuration changes on the local EDR device that are not synced to MXsecurity.

#### **New Connection**

Use this function to establish a connection to the MXsecurity software.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter the MXsecurity server IP address or domain name	None
0 to 64 characters	address.	None

Click **CONNECT** to connect to the MXsecurity service.

# Time

From the Time section, the following functions can be configured: System Time, and NTP/SNTP Server.



# System Time

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's system time can be synced with an NTP/SNTP server or can be userspecified. The system time is also used for time stamps in functions such as automatic warning emails.



#### NOTE

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router does not feature a real-time clock. If there is no NTP/SNTP server on the network or the device is not connected to the Internet, the Current Time and Current Date must be manually reconfigured after each reboot.

# Time

#### System Time Time Time Zone Current Time C 2022-07-08 18:06:50 UTC+08:00 Clock Source Local × Date\* 2022-07-08 Ē Time 0 06:06 PM APPLY SYNC FROM BROWSER

#### **Current Time**

This shows the current date, time, and time zone.

# NOTE

Click **SYNC FROM BROWSER** to synchronize the router's clock with the browser time. Click the  $\mathbf{C}$  icon in the upper right corner to refresh all the information on the page.

Clock Source					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Local	Set the clock source to local time. This will require you to manually specify the time and date.	Logal			
SNTP	Set the clock source to SNTP.	— Local			
NTP	Set the clock source to NTP.				

#### Local

Date

Setti	ng				Descri	ptior		Factory Def
Date					Manua	lly set	date in YYYY-MM-DD format.	Current date
2022	2 JUL	Ŧ			<	>		
Su	Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa		
JUL					1	2		
3	4	5	6	7	8	9		
10	11	12	13	14	15	16		
17	18	19	20	21	22	23		
24	25	26	27	28	29	30		
31								

Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Time	Manually set the time in HH:MM AM/PM format.	Current time

### **NTP/SNTP Server**

If SNTP or NTP is selected as the clock source, configure the following settings:

System Tim	e		
Time		Time Zone	
Current Time 2022-07-08 17:45:	42 UTC+	+08:00	
Clock Source SNTP	-		
Time Server 1			
	0 / 60		
Time Server 2			

#### Time Server 1

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IU TO BU Characters	Specify the IP or domain address of the primary time server (e.g., 192.168.1.1, time.stdtime.gov.tw, or time.nist.gov).	None

#### Time Server 2

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 60 characters	Specify the IP or domain address of the secondary time server. The Moxa Industrial Secure Router will use the	None
	secondary NTP server if it cannot connect to the primary NTP server.	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Time Zone**

Time	Time Zone	
me Zone JTC+08:00)Taipei		
Daylight Saving		
Daylight Saving Status Disabled	-	

#### Time Zone

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Select from the drop-	Select the time zone, which is used to determine the local	UTC (Coordinated
down list	time offset from UTC (Coordinated Universal Time).	Universal Time)

### **Daylight Saving**

The Daylight Saving settings are used to automatically set the Moxa router's time forward according to national standards.

#### Daylight Saving Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Daylight Saving time.	Disabled

If Daylight Saving time is enabled, configure the following settings:

Time		Time Zon	e	_					
Time Zone (UTC+08:00)Taipei					•				
Daylight Saving Daylight Saving Status Enabled	Ŧ								
Offset O	•								
	hour								
Start									
Month	•	Week		Day	•	Hour 00	-	Minutes 00	•
End									
Month	•	Week	-	Dav	•	Hour 00		Minutes 00	<b>.</b>

#### Offset

Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified hour	Specify the offset time (in hours) for Daylight Saving time.	0

### Start

Month		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified month	Specify the month the Daylight Saving time begins.	None
Week		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified week	Specify the week the Daylight Saving time begins.	None
Day		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified day	Specify the day the Daylight Saving time begins.	None
Hour		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified hour	Specify the hour the Daylight Saving time begins.	00
Minutes		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified minutes	Specify the minute(s) the Daylight Saving time begins.	00

### End

Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified month	Specify the month the Daylight Saving time ends.	None
Week		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified week	Specify the week the Daylight Saving time ends.	None
Day		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified day	Specify the day the Daylight Saving time ends.	None
Hour		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified hour	Specify the hour the Daylight Saving time ends.	00
Minutes		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
User-specified minutes	Specify the minute(s) the Daylight Saving time ends.	00

### NOTE

Changing the time zone will automatically adjust the current time. Be sure to set the time zone before setting the time.

# **NTP/SNTP Server**

# **NTP/SNTP Server**

NTP/SNTP Server \* Disabled APPLY

#### NTP/SNTP Server

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable NTP/SNTP server functionality for clients.	Disabled

# **Setting Check**

Setting Check is a safety function which provides a double confirmation mechanism when a remote user changes the security policies, such as Layer 3 – 7 Policy, Network Address Translate, and Trusted Access. When a remote user changes these security policies, Setting Check allows you to block the remote user's connection to the EDR device. In the event of a misconfiguration, often the only way to correct a wrong setting is to get help from the local operator or go on-site and physically connect to the device through the console port, which takes up time and resources. Enabling the Setting Check function will execute these new policy changes temporarily until confirmed by the user. If not confirmed, the Industrial Secure Router will revert the changes.

Set	ting Check
Set	ting Check Configuration
	Layer 3 - 7 Policy
	Network Address Translate
	Trusted Access
Time	r *
180	
10-3	3600 sec.
A	PPLY

#### **Setting Check Configuration**

#### Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Enable or disable the Setting Check function for Layer 3 - 7 policies changes.

#### Network Address Translate

Enable or disable the Setting Check function for NAT policies changes.

#### **Trusted Access**

Enable or disable the Setting Check function for Trusted IP address changes.

Timer		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
10 to 3600 seconds	Specify the time (in seconds) the user has to confirm the changes. If the timer expires and the changes were not confirmed, the system will automatically revert to the previous settings.	180 (seconds)

For example, if a remote user (IP: 10.10.10.10) connects to the Industrial Secure Router and changes the Trusted IP address to 10.10.10.12, or accidentally disables the Trusted IP entry and applies the changes, the connection to the Industrial Secure Router will be lost because the IP address is no longer in the Industrial Secure Router's Trusted IP list.

Edit Index 1		
Status * Disabled -		
IP Address *		
10.10.12		
Netmask * 255.255.255.255		
	CANCEL	APPLY
	CANCEL	APPLY

If the user enables the Setting Check function for Trusted IP list changes and the confirm Timer is set to 15 seconds, when the user clicks the **APPLY** button on the Trusted IP list page, the Industrial Secure Router will execute the configuration change and the web browser will attempt to go to the Setting Check Confirmed page automatically. Because the remote user's IP address is not in the new Trusted IP list, the remote user cannot connect to the Setting Check Confirmed page. After 15 seconds, the timer will expire and the Industrial Secure Router will roll back to the original Trusted IP List settings, allowing the remote user to reconnect to the Industrial Secure Router.



The page you are looking for is currently unavailable. The Web site might be experiencing technical difficulties, or you may need to adjust your browser settings.

Please try the following:

- Click the 🚯 Refresh button, or try again later.
- If you typed the page address in the Address bar, make sure that it is spelled correctly.
- To check your connection settings, click the **Tools** menu, and then click **Internet Options**. On the **Connections** tab, click **Settings**. The settings should match those provided by your local area network (LAN) administrator or Internet service provider (ISP).
- See if your Internet connection settings are being detected. You can set Microsoft Windows to examine your network and automatically discover network connection settings (if your network administrator has enabled this setting).
  - Click the Tools menu, and then click Internet Options.
  - 2. On the Connections tab, click LAN Settings.
  - 3. Select Automatically detect settings, and then click OK.

If the new configuration does not block the remote user's connection to the Industrial Secure Router, the user will see the Setting Check Confirmed page. Click **CONFIRM** to save and apply the changes.

This chapter describes how to configure the physical ports and network interfaces of the Industrial Secure Router.

From the **Network Configuration** section, you can configure the **Ports**, **Layer 2 Switching**, and **Network Interfaces** settings.



# **Ports**

From the **Ports** section, the following functions can be configured: **Port Settings,** and **Link Aggregation**.



# **Port Settings**

Port settings let you manage port access, port transmission speed, flow control, and port type (MDI or MDIX). The EDR-G9010 Series has eight RJ45 Ethernet ports and two mini GBIC fiber ports.

# Setting

Se	tting		Status				
					QSE	earch	
	Port	Status	Media Type	Description	Speed/Duplex	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX
1	1	Enabled	1000TX.RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
1	2	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
i	3	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
i	4	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
i	б	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
1	6	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
i	7	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
1	8	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
1	9	Enabled	1000FX,miniGBIC			-	22
1	10	Enabled	1000FX.miniGBIC		115	122	<u></u>

### **Modify Port Settings**

Click the  $\checkmark$  icon to modify the settings of the corresponding port.

Edit Port 1 S	ettings	
Status Enabled	•	
Media Type 1000TX,RJ45		
Description		
		0/127
Speed/Duplex Mode		
Auto		
Flow Control		
Disabled	× ()	
MDI/MDIX		
Auto		
		CANC

Configure the following settings:

Status					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the port.	Enabled			
Media Type					

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Media type	Displays the port's media type.	Current media type

Description				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Max. 127 characters	Enter a description for the port. This helps administrators differentiate between different ports more easily. Example: PLC 1	None		

#### Speed/Duplex Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Auto	Allow the port to use the IEEE 802.3u protocol to negotiate the port speed and duplex mode with the connected device. The port and connected device will determine the best speed for that connection.	
1G Full		Auto
100M-Full	Calast a fixed speed and dupley made if the connected	
100M-Half	Select a fixed speed and duplex mode if the connected Ethernet device has trouble auto-negotiating the line speed.	
10M-Full	Luternet device has trouble auto-negotiating the line speed.	
10M-Half		

#### Flow Control

The Flow Control setting allows you to enable or disable the flow control feature for the port when the port's Speed is set to Auto. Flow control helps manage the data transfer rate between the router and the connected Ethernet device.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable flow control for this port when the port's Speed is set to Auto.	Disabled
MDI/MDIX		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Allow the port to auto-detect the port type of the conr Ethernet device and change the port type accordingly.		Auto
MDI	Choose MDI or MDIX if the connected Ethernet device has	Auto
MDIX	trouble auto-negotiating the port type.	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### Status

The Status page shows the current status of the Ethernet ports including the port transmission speed, flow control, and port type (MDI or MDIX).

Sett	ng	Status						
2						Q Search		
Port	Status	Media Type	Link Status	Description	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX	Port State	
1/32	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	1G-Full		off	MDI	Forwarding	
1/2	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	-		2	27		
	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45			π	Ħ	112	
1/4	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	1940		щ	4		
1/5	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	100		2	τ.		
1/6:	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45			÷	÷		
17	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	22		25	<u></u>		
1/8	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	17		-	7		
179)	Enabled	N/A	1944		щ	4	<u>222</u>	
1/10	Enabled	N/A	-		2	-		

# Link Aggregation

Link aggregation involves grouping links into a link aggregation group. A MAC client can treat link aggregation groups as if they were a single link.

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's port trunking feature allows devices to communicate by aggregating up to 4 trunk groups, with a maximum of 8 ports for each group. If one of the 8 ports fails, the other seven ports will automatically provide backup and share the traffic.

Port trunking can be used to combine up to 8 ports between two Moxa switches or industrial secure routers. If all ports on both switches are configured as 1000BaseTX and they are operating in full duplex, the potential bandwidth of the connection will be 16 Gbps.

### Link Aggregation

e c			Q, Search		
	Port Channel (Trunk)	Configure member	Active Member		
√lax. 4				0 of 0	

### **The Port Trunking Concept**

Moxa has developed a port trunking protocol that provides the following benefits:

- Greater flexibility in setting up your network connections, since the bandwidth of a link can be doubled, tripled, or quadrupled.
- Redundancy—if one link is broken, the remaining trunked ports share the traffic within the trunk group.
- Load sharing—MAC client traffic can be distributed across multiple links.

To avoid broadcast storms or loops in your network while configuring a trunk, first disable or disconnect all ports that you want to add to the trunk or remove from the trunk. After you finish configuring the trunk, enable or reconnect the ports.

Each Moxa industrial secure router can set a maximum of 4 port channel (trunking) groups. When you activate port trunking, certain settings on each port will be reset to factory default values or will be disabled:

- Communication redundancy will be reset
- 802.1Q VLAN will be reset
- Multicast Filtering will be reset
- Port Lock will be reset and disabled.
- Set Device IP will be reset
- Mirror will be reset

### **Create a Link Aggregation**

Click the 🖪 icon on the Link Aggregation page.



#### Config Member Port

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Port drop-down menu	Select the ports you want to add to the link aggregation	None
i ore arop down menu	group.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

#### **Edit Existing Link Aggregation**

Click the  $\checkmark$  icon to modify the settings for each trunking port.

# Link Aggregation

+ C			<b>Q</b> Search	
	Port Channel (Trunk)	Configure member	Active Member	
□ /	1	1/1, 1/2		
□ ⁄	2	1/3, 1/4		
	3	1/5, 1/6		
□ ⁄	4	1/7, 1/8	1/7	
Max. 4				1 - 4 of 4

Select the ports you want to add to the link aggregation group and click **APPLY**.

f you want to activate runking ports will be s			orango, are	an ranouonon	
a driving porto min be	set to de	fault values			
Config Member Port *					
1/1, 1/2	*	0			

### **Delete a Link Aggregation**

Select the link aggregation groups you want to delete in the Link Aggregation list and click the  $\blacksquare$  icon.

ık A	gg	regation			
Î	C			Q Search	
		Port Channel (Trunk)	Configure member	Active Member	
<u>~</u>	1	1	1/1, 1/2		
	1	2	1/3, 1/4		
	1	3	1/5, 1/6		
	1	4	1/7, 1/8	1/7	
Max. 4					1 – 4 of 4

Click **DELETE** to delete the selected items.

Delete Link Aggregat	ion	
Warning: Some features (like RSTP, selected Link Aggregation values.		
Are you sure you want to d Aggregation?	elete the se	lected Link
	CANCEL	DELETE

# Layer 2 Switching

From the Layer 2 Switching section, the following functions can be configured: VLAN, MAC Address Table, QoS, Rate Limit, and Multicast.

Layer 2 Switching	^
VLAN	
MAC Address Table	
QoS	
Rate Limit	
Multicast	~

# VLAN

### **Using Virtual LAN**

Setting up Virtual LANs (VLANs) on your Moxa industrial secure router increases the efficiency of your network by dividing the LAN into logical segments, as opposed to physical segments. In general, VLANs are easier to manage.

### **The VLAN Concept**

#### What is a VLAN?

A VLAN is a group of devices that can be located anywhere on a network, but which communicate as if they are on the same physical segment. With VLANs, you can segment your network without being restricted by physical connections—a limitation of traditional network design. With VLANs you can segment your network into:

- **Departmental groups**—you could have one VLAN for the marketing department, another for the finance department, and another for the product development department.
- **Hierarchical groups**—you could have one VLAN for directors, another for managers, and another for general staff.
- Usage groups—you could have one VLAN for email users and another for multimedia users.



#### **Benefits of VLANs**

The main benefit of VLANs is that they provide a network segmentation system that is far more flexible than traditional networks. Using VLANs also provides you with three other benefits:

- VLANs ease the relocation of devices on networks: With traditional networks, network administrators spend much of their time dealing with moves and changes. If users move to a different sub-network, the addresses of each host must be updated manually. With a VLAN setup, if a host originally on VLAN Marketing, for example, is moved to a port on another part of the network, and retains its original subnet membership, you only need to specify that the new port is on VLAN Marketing. You do not need to do any re-cabling.
- VLANs provide extra security: Devices within each VLAN can only communicate with other devices on the same VLAN. If a device on VLAN Marketing needs to communicate with devices on VLAN Finance, the traffic must pass through a routing device or Layer 3 switch.
- VLANs help control traffic: With traditional networks, congestion can be caused by broadcast traffic that is directed to all network devices, regardless of whether or not they need it. VLANs increase the efficiency of your network because each VLAN can be set up to contain only those devices that need to communicate with each other.

#### VLANs and the Moxa switch

- Your Moxa switch includes support for VLANs using IEEE Std 802.1Q-2005. This standard allows traffic from multiple VLANs to be carried across one physical link. The IEEE Std 802.1Q-2005 standard allows each port on your Moxa switch to be placed as follows:
- On a single VLAN defined in the switch
- On several VLANs simultaneously using 802.1Q tagging
- The standard requires that you define the 802.1Q VLAN ID for each VLAN on your Moxa switch before the switch can use it to forward traffic:

#### Managing a VLAN

A new or initialized Moxa industrial secure router contains a single VLAN—the Default VLAN. This VLAN has the following definition:

- Management VLAN ID 1 can be changed
- 802.1Q VLAN default ID 1 cannot be deleted

All of the ports are initially placed on this VLAN, and it is the only VLAN that allows you to access the management software of the Moxa switch over the network.

#### **Communication Between VLANs**

If devices connected to a VLAN need to communicate with devices on a different VLAN, a router or Layer 3 switching device with connections to both VLANs need to be installed. Communication between VLANs can only take place if they are all connected to a routing or Layer 3 switching device.

#### VLANs: Tagged and Untagged Membership

Moxa's switch supports 802.1Q VLAN tagging, a system that allows traffic for multiple VLANs to be carried on a single physical link (backbone, trunk). When setting up VLANs you need to understand when to use untagged or tagged membership of VLANs. Simply put, if a port is on a single VLAN it can be an untagged member, but if the port needs to be a member of multiple VLANs, a tagged membership must be defined.

A typical host (e.g., clients) will be an untagged member of one VLAN, defined as an **Access Port** in a Moxa switch, while an inter-switch connection will be a tagged member of all VLANs, defined as a **Trunk Port** in a Moxa switch.

The IEEE Std 802.1Q-2005 defines how VLANs operate within an open packet-switched network. An 802.1Q compliant packet carries additional information that allows a switch to determine which VLAN the port belongs to. If a frame is carrying the additional information, it is known as a tagged frame.

To carry multiple VLANs across a single physical link (backbone, trunk), each packet must be tagged with a VLAN identifier so that the switches can identify which packets belong to which VLAN. To communicate between VLANs, a router must be used.

Moxa's switch supports three types of VLAN port settings:

- Access Port: The port connects to a single device that is not tagged. The user must define the default port PVID that assigns which VLAN the device belongs to. Once the ingress packet of this Access Port egresses to another Trunk Port (the port needs all packets to carry tag information), the switch will insert this PVID into this packet so the next 802.1Q VLAN switch can recognize it.
- **Trunk Port:** The port connects to a LAN that consists of untagged devices and tagged devices. In general, the traffic of the Trunk Port must have a Tag. Users can also assign a PVID to a Trunk Port. The untagged packet on the Trunk Port will be assigned the default port PVID as its VID.
- **Hybrid Port:** The port is similar to a Trunk port, except users can explicitly assign tags to be removed from egress packets.

The following section illustrates how to use these ports to set up different applications.



In this application:

- Port 1 connects a single untagged device and assigns it to VLAN 5; it should be configured as an Access Port with PVID 5.
- Port 2 connects a LAN with two untagged devices belonging to VLAN 2. One tagged device with VID 3 and one tagged device with VID 4. It should be configured as a Hybrid Port with PVID 2 for untagged device and Fixed VLAN (Tagged) with 3 and 4 for tagged device. Since each port can only have one unique PVID, all untagged devices on the same port must belong to the same VLAN.
- Port 3 connects with another switch. It should be configured as a **Trunk Port**. GVRP protocol will be used through the Trunk Port.
- Port 4 connects a single untagged device and assigns it to VLAN 2; it should be configured as an Access Port with PVID 2.
- Port 5 connects a single untagged device and assigns it to VLAN 3; it should be configured as an Access Port with PVID 3.
- Port 6 connect a single untagged device and assigns it to VLAN 5; it should be configured as an Access Port with PVID 5.
- Port 7 connects a single untagged device and assigns it to VLAN 4; it should be configured as an Access Port with PVID 4.

After the application is properly configured:

- Packets from Device A will travel through **Trunk Port 3** with tagged VID 5. Switch B will recognize its VLAN, pass it to port 6, and then remove tags received successfully by Device G, and vice versa.
- Packets from Devices B and C will travel through **Hybrid Port 2** with tagged VID 2. Switch B recognizes its VLAN, passes it to port 4, and then removes tags received successfully by Device F, and vice versa.
- Packets from Device D will travel through **Trunk Port 3** with tagged VID 3. Switch B will recognize its VLAN, pass to port 5, and then remove tags received successfully by Device H. Packets from Device H will travel through **Trunk Port 3** with PVID 3. Switch A will recognize its VLAN and pass it to port 2, but will not remove tags received successfully by Device D.
- Packets from Device E will travel through **Trunk Port 3** with tagged VID 4. Switch B will recognize its VLAN, pass it to port 7, and then remove tags received successfully by Device I. Packets from Device I will travel through **Trunk Port 3** with tagged VID 4. Switch A will recognize its VLAN and pass it to port 2, but will not remove tags received successfully by Device E.

# Global

From the **Global** tab, you can configure management VLAN and port settings.

Global	Settings	Status
anagement VLAN	L.	
anagement VLAN		
	*	
Innanament Dort (	Quick Settings	
lanagement Port		

### Management VLAN

Management VLAN				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
1 to 16	Select the management VLAN ID from the drop-down menu.	1		

### **Management Port Quick Settings**

Use this for quick and easy configuration of VLAN settings for multiple ports at once.

Setting	Description	<b>Factory Default</b>
1 to 10	Select the management port of this Moxa Industrial Secure Router for quick and easy configuration of VLAN settings for multiple ports at once. Set the Mode, PVID, Tagged VLAN ID, and Untagged VLAN ID and click <b>APPLY</b> button to create the VLAN ID configuration table.	None

# VLAN

Global	Settings	Status		
lanagement VLAN				
A second s				
vianagement vLAN				
Management VLAN 1 Management Port Q	uick Settings			
1	uick Settings			
1 Management Port Q				
1 Management Port Q	uick Settings		Untagged VLAN	

#### Mode

Setting	Description	<b>Factory Default</b>
Access	Define the port as an Access port. This is used when	
ACCESS	connecting to single devices without tags.	
Trunk	Define the port as a Trunk port. This is used when connecting	
пинк	to another 802.1Q VLAN aware the Industrial Secure Router.	Access
	Define the port as a Hybrid port. This is used when connecting	ALLESS
Uvbrid	tp another Access 802.1Q VLAN aware Industrial Secure	
Hybrid	Router or another LAN that combines tagged and/or untagged	
	devices and/or other routers/hubs.	

#### PVID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 16	Set the default VLAN ID for untagged devices that connect to	1
1 (0 10	the port.	T

#### Tagged VLAN

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs, 1 to	If the Mode is set to Trunk or Hybrid, set the other VLAN ID for tagged devices that connect to the port. Use commas to separate different VIDs.	Access mode: None Trunk or Hybrid mode: 1

#### Untagged VLAN

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs, 1 to 16	for tagged devices that connect to the port and tags that need to be removed in egress packets. Use commas to separate	Access mode: 1 Trunk or Hybrid mode: None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# Settings

Gl	obal	Se	ttings	Status		
٠					Q Search	
	VLAN	Member	Port			
	1	1, 2, 3, 4,	5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10			
Aax. 1	6					1 = 1.of 1
C					Q Search	
	Port	Mode	PVID	Untagged VLAN	Tagged VLAN	
i	1	Access	1	1,		
ï	2	Access	1	1,		
i	3	Access	1	1.		
i	4	Access	1	1,		
i	5	Access	1	1.		
1	6	Access	1	1,		
i	7	Access	1	n,		
i	8	Access	1	1,		
ï	9	Access	1	₫e		
	10	Access	1	1,		
1						

#### **Create a VLAN**

Click the 🖿 icon to create a VLAN.

Create VLAN			
VID *	•		
Max 16 VLANs			
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### VID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
VLAN ID, max. 16 VLANs	Specify the VLAN ID. You can create multiple VLANs at once by entering single VLAN IDs or a range of IDs. For example, 2, 4-8, 10-13.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the VLAN.

#### Delete a VLAN

Select the VLAN you want to delete from the list and click the  $\ensuremath{\overline{1}}$  icon.

Global		Settings	Status	
				<b>Q</b> Search
~	VLAN	Member Port		
	1	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10		
~	2			
~	3			

#### Click **DELETE** to delete the selected items.

Delete VLAN	
Are you sure you want to delete the selected VLAN?	
CANCEL	DELETE
#### **Modify the Port Settings**

Click  $\checkmark$  to modify the settings of the corresponding VLAN entry.

Vode		
Access	•	
PVID		
1		
Tagged VLAN	-	
Untagged VLAN		
1	*	

#### Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Access	Define the port as an Access port. This is used when connecting to single devices without tags.	
Trunk	Define the port as a Trunk port. This is used when connecting to another 802.1Q VLAN aware the Industrial Secure Router.	Access
Hybrid	Define the port as a Hybrid port. This is used when connecting to another Access 802.1Q VLAN aware Industrial Secure Router or another LAN that combines tagged and/or untagged devices and/or other routers/hubs.	Access

#### PVID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 16	Set the default VLAN ID for untagged devices that connect to	1
1 10 10	the port.	T

#### Tagged VLAN

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs, 1 to 16	If the Mode is set to Trunk or Hybrid, set the other VLAN ID for tagged devices that connect to the port. Use commas to separate different VIDs.	Access mode: None Trunk or Hybrid mode: 1
Untagged VLAN		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Member VIDs, 1 to	for tanged devices that connect to the nort and tags that need	Access mode: 1 Trunk or Hybrid mode: None

When finished, click the **APPLY** button to save your changes.

#### Status

From the **Status** tab, you can review created VLAN groups, joined access ports, trunk ports, and hybrid ports. Click the  $\mathbf{C}$  icon to refresh the information in the VLAN Status Table.

Global	Settings	Status	
Э			Q Search
VLAN Hybric	l Port	Trunk Port	Access Port
1			1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

## **MAC Address Table**

The MAC Address Table shows the MAC address of devices that go through the Moxa industrial secure router. The Aging Time (10 to 300 seconds) is the duration that a MAC address entry can remain in the Moxa router's MAC Address Table before it is removed. Once a MAC address is removed, the Industrial Secure Router will no longer forward frames originating from this MAC address.

To modify the Aging Time, specify the duration (in seconds) and click **Apply**.

0								
- 300		sec.						
APPLY								
								_
Э					0	Search		
Index	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Туре	Port				
1	1	b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85	Learnt Unicast	7				
2	1	b4:2e:99:96:56:06	Learnt Unicast	7				
3	٦	cc:32:e5:d6:a9:ec	Learnt Unicast	7				
4	1	d8:5e:d3:2b:28:1d	Learnt Unicast	7				

You can quickly filter MAC addresses by entering one of the following criteria into the Search field.

Learnt Unicast	Show all learnt Unicast MAC addresses.
Static	Show all Static, Static Lock, and Static Multicast MAC addresses.
Multicast	Show all Static Multicast MAC addresses.
Port x	Show all MAC addresses associated with a specific port.

The table displays the following information:

VLAN ID	This field shows the VLAN ID.
MAC Address	This field shows the MAC address.
Туре	This field shows the type of this MAC address.
Port	This field shows the port that this MAC address belongs to.

## QoS

This section describes how Quality of Service (QoS) works and how to configure the relevant settings. There are three main functions in this section: **CoS Mapping**, **DSCP Mapping**, and **Port Classification**.

#### **QoS Overview**

The switch's traffic prioritization capability provides Quality of Service (QoS) to your network by making data delivery more reliable. You can prioritize traffic on your network to ensure that high priority data is transmitted with minimum delay. Traffic can be controlled by a set of rules to obtain the required Quality of Service for your network. The rules define different types of traffic and specify how each type should be treated as it passes through the switch. The switch can inspect both IEEE 802.1p/1Q Layer 2 CoS (Class of Service) tags, and even Layer 3 DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) information to provide consistent classification of the entire network. The switch's QoS capability improves the performance and determinism of industrial networks for mission-critical applications.

#### **The Traffic Prioritization Concept**

Traffic prioritization allows you to prioritize data so that time-sensitive and system-critical data can be transferred smoothly and with minimal delay over a network. The benefits of using traffic prioritization are:

- Improve network performance by controlling a wide variety of traffic and by managing congestion.
- Assign priorities to different categories of traffic. For example, set higher priorities for time-critical or mission-critical applications.
- Provide predictable throughput for multimedia applications, such as video conferencing or voice over IP, and minimize traffic delay and jitter.
- Optimize the network utilization depending on application usage and usage needs. Hence, asset owners do not always need to expand their backbone bandwidth as the amount of traffic increases.

Traffic prioritization uses eight traffic queues to ensure that higher priority traffic can be forwarded separately from lower priority traffic, which guarantees Quality of Service (QoS) to your network.

Moxa switch traffic prioritization is based on two standards:

- IEEE 802.1p—a Layer 2 QoS marking scheme
- Differentiated Services (DiffServ)—a Layer 3 QoS marking scheme.

#### IEEE 802.1p Class of Service

The IEEE Std 802.1D 2005 Edition marking scheme, which is an enhancement to IEEE Std 802.1D, enables Quality of Service on the LAN. Traffic service levels are defined in the IEEE 802.1Q 4-byte tag, which is used to carry VLAN identification as well as IEEE 802.1p priority information. The IEEE 802.1p occupying 3 bits of the tag follows the destination MAC address and Source MAC address.

The IEEE Std 802.1D 2005 Edition priority marking scheme assigns an IEEE 802.1p priority level between 0 and 7 to each frame, which specifies the level of service that the associated packets will be handled with. The table below shows an example of how different traffic types can be mapped to the eight IEEE 802.1p priority levels.

IEEE 802.1p Priority Level	IEEE 802.1D Traffic Type
0	Best Effort
1	Background (lowest priority)
2	Reserved
3	Excellent Effort (business critical)
4	Controlled Load (streaming multimedia)
5	Video (interactive media)
6	Voice (interactive voice)
7	Network Control Reserved traffic

Even though the IEEE 802.1p standard is the most widely used prioritization scheme for LAN environments, it still has some restrictions:

- It requires an additional 4-byte tag in the frame, which is normally optional for Ethernet networks. Without this tag, the scheme cannot work.
- The tag is part of the IEEE 802.1Q header, so to implement QoS at Layer 2, the entire network must implement IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tagging.
- It is only supported within a LAN and does not cross the WAN boundaries, since the IEEE 802.1Q tags will be removed when the packets pass through a router.

#### Differentiated Services (DiffServ) Traffic Marking

DiffServ is a Layer 3 marking scheme that uses the DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) field in the IP header to specify the packet priority. DSCP is an advanced intelligent method of traffic marking that allows you to choose how your network prioritizes different types of traffic. The DSCP field can be set from 0 to 63 to map to user-defined service levels, enabling users to regulate and categorize traffic by applications with different service levels.

The advantages of DiffServ over IEEE 802.1Q are as follows:

- You can prioritize and assign different traffic with appropriate latency, throughput, or reliability by each port.
- No extra tags are required.
- The DSCP priority tags are carried in the IP header, which can pass the WAN boundaries and through the Internet.
- DSCP is backwards compatible with IPv4 ToS (Type of Service), which allows operation with legacy devices that use IPv4 Layer 3.

#### **Traffic Prioritization**

Moxa switches classify traffic based on Layer 2 of the OSI 7 Layer model, and the switch prioritizes outbound traffic according to the priority information defined in the received packet. Incoming traffic is classified based upon the IEEE 802.1p service level field and is assigned to the appropriate egress priority queue. The traffic flow through the switch is as follows:

- A packet received by the Moxa switch may or may not have an 802.1p tag associated with it. If it does not, then it is given a default CoS value (according to the port settings in the classification section). Alternatively, the packet might be marked with a new 802.1p value, which will result in all knowledge of the previous 802.1p tag being lost.
- Each egress queue has associated 802.1p priority levels, and can be defined by users, the packet will be
  placed in the appropriate priority queue. When the packet reaches the head of its queue and is about to
  be transmitted, the device determines whether or not the egress port belongs to the VLAN group. If it
  is, then the new 802.1p tag is used in the extended 802.1D header.

#### **Traffic Queues**

The hardware of Moxa switches has multiple traffic queues that allow packet prioritization to occur. Higher priority traffic can pass through the Moxa switch without being delayed by lower priority traffic. As each packet arrives in the Moxa switch, it undergoes ingress processing (which includes classification, marking/re-marking), and is then sorted into the appropriate queue. The switch then forwards packets from each queue.

Moxa switches support two different queuing mechanisms:

- **Weight Fair:** This method services all the traffic queues, giving priority to the higher priority queues. Under most circumstances, the Weight Fair method gives high priority precedence over low priority, but in the event that high priority traffic does not reach the link capacity, lower priority traffic is not blocked.
- **Strict:** This method services high traffic queues first; low priority queues are delayed until no more high priority data needs to be sent. The Strict method always gives precedence to high priority over low priority.

## **CoS Mapping**

CoS I	Mapping	DSCP Mappin	g	Port Classification	
					Q Search
	CoS	Priority Queue			
1	0	0			
1	1	0			
i	2	1			
i	3	1			
i	4	2			
1	5	2			
i	6	3			
i	7	3			

Click the  $\checkmark$  icon to configure the priority queue settings of the corresponding CoS level.

Priority Queue *		
0	*	

Priority Queue		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 3	Select the priority queue to map to the CoS level.	0 to 3

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **DSCP** Mapping

#### 005

CoS N	Mapping	DSC	P Mapping	Port Classification		
					<u>c</u>	Search
	DSCP	Level				
i	0x0 (1)	0				
i	0x4 (2)	0				
1	0x8 (3)	0				
i	Oxc (4)	0				
1	0x10 (5)	0				
1	0x14 (6)	0				
1	0x18 (7)	0				
1	0x1c (8)	0				
i	0x20 (9)	0				
1	0x24 (10	0				

Click the 🖍 icon to configure the priority queue settings of the corresponding DSCP value.

Edit DSCP	0x0 (1) Settings	
Priority Queue *		
0	*	
		CANCEL APPLY

#### Priority Queue

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 3	Select the egress queue to map to the ToS value.	0 to 3

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Port Classification**

CoS Mappin	g DSCP Mapping	Port Classification		
heduling Mecha eight Fair(8:		*		
			Q Sea	arch.
Port	Inspect ToS		Inspect CoS	Priority
1/1	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/2	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/3	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/4	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/5	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/6	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/7	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/8	Enabled		Enabled	3
1/9	Enabled		Enabled	3
/ 1/10	) Enabled		Enabled	3

The Moxa switch supports inspection of Layer 3 ToS and/or Layer 2 CoS tag information to determine how to classify traffic packets.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	The Moxa industrial secure router has 4 priority queues. In the	
	weight fair scheme, an 8, 4, 2, 1 weighting is applied to the	
Weight Fair(8:4:2:1)	four priorities. This approach prevents the lower priority	
	frames from being starved of opportunity for transmission	
	with only a slight delay to the higher priority frames.	
	In the Strict-priority scheme, all top-priority frames egress a	Weight Fair(8:4:2:1
	port until that priority's queue is empty, and then the next	
Strict(High Priority First	lower priority queue's frames egress. This approach can cause	
Always)	the lower priorities to be starved of opportunity for	
	transmitting any frames but ensures that all high priority	
	frames will egress the switch as soon as possible.	

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

Click the 🖍 icon to configure the Inspect type and Queue priority for the corresponding port.

Inspect ToS *			
Enabled	*		
Inspect CoS *			
Enabled			
Priority *			
3	*		

#### Inspect ToS

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable inspection of Type of Service (ToS) bits in the IPV4 frame to determine the priority of each frame.	Enabled
Inspect COS		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable inspection of 802.1p CoS tags in the MAC frame to determine the priority of each frame.	Enabled

Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 7	Specify the priority. The port priority ranges from 0 (lowest) to 7 (highest).	3

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.



#### NOTE

The priority of an ingress frame is determined in the following order:

- 1. Inspect CoS
- 2. Inspect ToS
- 3. Port Priority



#### NOTE

These classifications can be enabled individually or as a combination. For instance, if a "hot" higher priority port is required for a network design, **Inspect TOS** and **Inspect CoS** can be disabled. This setting leaves only port default priority active, which results in all ingress frames being assigned the same priority on that port.

## **Rate Limiting**

In general, one host should not be allowed to occupy unlimited bandwidth, particularly when the device malfunctions. For example, so-called "broadcast storms" could be caused by an incorrectly configured topology, or a malfunctioning device. Moxa industrial secure routers not only prevent broadcast storms but can also be configured to have a different ingress rate for all packets, giving administrators full control of their limited bandwidth to prevent undesirable effects caused by unpredictable faults.

ss Polic it Broa	y * adcast	•	
PPLY			
			Q Search
	Port	Ingress	Egress
1	1/1	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/2	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/3	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/4	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/5	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
i	1/6	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/7	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/8	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/9	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
1	1/10	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)

#### Ingress Policy

ingress roney		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Limit All		
Limit Broadcast, Flooded		
Unicast	Select the ingress rate limit for different packet types.	Limit Broadcast
Limit Broadcast, Multicast		
Limit Broadcast		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Click the 🖍 icon to configure the Ingress and Egress rate for the corresponding port.

Ingress *		
Not Limited	*	
Egress *		
Not Limited	*	

Ingress/Egress		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select the ingress/egress rate limit (% of max. throughput) for all packets.	Not Limited

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## Multicast

Multicast filtering improves the performance of networks that carry multicast traffic. This section covers the IGMP Snooping and Static Multicast Table pages, and explains how multicast filtering can be implemented on your Moxa industrial secure router.

Multicast	^
IGMP Snooping	
Static Multicast Table	

### The Concept of Multicast Filtering

#### What is an IP Multicast?

A *multicast* is a packet sent by one host to multiple hosts. Only those hosts that belong to a specific multicast group will receive the multicast. If the network is set up correctly, a multicast can only be sent to an end-station or a subset of end-stations on a LAN or VLAN that belong to the multicast group. Multicast group members can be distributed across multiple subnets, so that multicast transmissions can occur within a campus LAN or over a WAN. In addition, networks that support IP multicast send only *one* copy of the desired information across the network until the delivery path that reaches group members diverges. To make more efficient use of network bandwidth, it is only at these points that multicast packets are duplicated and forwarded. A multicast packet has a multicast group address in the destination address field of the packet's IP header.

#### **Benefits of Multicast**

The benefits of using IP multicast are:

- It uses the most efficient, sensible method to deliver the same information to many receivers with only one transmission.
- It reduces the load on the source (for example, a server) since it will not need to produce several copies of the same data.
- It makes efficient use of network bandwidth and scales well as the number of multicast group members increases.
- Works with other IP protocols and services, such as Quality of Service (QoS).

Multicast transmission makes more sense and is more efficient than unicast transmission for some applications. For example, multicasts are often used for video-conferencing, since high volumes of traffic must be sent to several end-stations at the same time, but where broadcasting the traffic to all end-stations would cause a substantial reduction in network performance. Furthermore, several industrial automation protocols, such as Allen-Bradley, EtherNet/IP, Siemens Profibus, and Foundation Fieldbus HSE (High Speed Ethernet), use multicast. These industrial Ethernet protocols use publisher/subscriber communications models by multicasting packets that could flood a network with heavy traffic. IGMP Snooping is used to prune multicast traffic so that it only travels to those end destinations that require the traffic, reducing the amount of traffic on the Ethernet LAN.

#### **Multicast Filtering**

Multicast filtering ensures that only end-stations that have joined certain groups receive multicast traffic. With multicast filtering, network devices only forward multicast traffic to the ports that are connected to registered end-stations. The following two figures illustrate how a network behaves without multicast filtering, and with multicast filtering.



All hosts receive the multicast traffic, even if they don't need it.

# Hosts only receive dedicated traffic from other hosts belonging to the same group.

#### **Multicast Filtering and Moxa's Industrial Secure Routers**

The Moxa industrial secure router has two ways to achieve multicast filtering: IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) Snooping and adding a static multicast MAC manually to filter multicast traffic automatically.

#### Snooping Mode

Snooping Mode allows your industrial secure router to forward multicast packets only to the appropriate ports. The router **snoops** on exchanges between hosts and an IGMP device to find those ports that want to join a multicast group, and then configures its filters accordingly.

#### Query Mode

Query Mode allows the Moxa router to work as the Querier if it has the lowest IP address on the subnetwork to which it belongs.

IGMP querying is enabled by default on the Moxa router to ensure proceeding query election. Enable query mode to run multicast sessions on a network that does not contain IGMP routers (or queriers). Query mode allows users to enable IGMP Snooping by VLAN ID. The Moxa industrial secure router supports IGMP Snooping Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3. Version 2 is compatible with version 1. The default setting is IGMP V1/V2.

#### **IGMP Multicast Filtering**

IGMP is used by IP-supporting network devices to register hosts with multicast groups. It can be used on all LANs and VLANs that contain a multicast-capable IP router, and on other network devices that support multicast filtering. Moxa switches support IGMP Version 1, 2, and 3. IGMP Version 1 and 2 work as follows:

- The IP router (or querier) periodically sends query packets to all end-stations on the LANs or VLANs that are connected to it. For networks with more than one IP router, the router with the lowest IP address is the querier. A switch with an IP address lower than the IP address of any other IGMP queriers connected to the LAN or VLAN can become the IGMP querier.
- When an IP host receives a query packet, it sends a report packet back that identifies the multicast
  group that the end-station would like to join.
- When the report packet arrives at a port on a switch with IGMP Snooping enabled, the switch knows
  that the port should forward traffic for the multicast group, and then proceeds to forward the packet to
  the router.
- When the router receives the report packet, it registers that the LAN or VLAN requires traffic for the multicast groups.
- When the router forwards traffic for the multicast group to the LAN or VLAN, the switches only forward the traffic to ports that received a report packet.

IGMP Version 3 supports "source filtering," which allows the system to define how to treat packets from specified source addresses. The system can either allow-list or deny-list specified sources.

<b>IGMP Version</b>	Main Features	Reference
V1	a. Periodic query	RFC-1112
V2	Compatible with V1 and adds: a. Group-specific query b. Leave group messages c. Resends specific queries to verify leave message was the last one in the group d. Querier election	RFC-2236
V3	<ul> <li>Compatible with V1, V2 and adds:</li> <li>a. Source filtering</li> <li>Accept multicast traffic from a specified source</li> <li>Accept multicast traffic from any source except the specified source</li> </ul>	RFC-3376

#### **IGMP version comparison**

#### Static Multicast MAC

Some devices may support multicast packets, but not support IGMP Snooping. The Moxa industrial secure router supports adding multicast groups manually to enable multicast filtering.

#### **Enabling Multicast Filtering**

Use the USB console or web interface to enable or disable IGMP Snooping and IGMP querying. If IGMP Snooping is not enabled, then IP multicast traffic is always forwarded, flooding the network.

#### **IGMP Snooping**

IGMP Snooping provides the ability to prune multicast traffic so that it travels only to those end destinations that require that traffic, thereby reducing the amount of traffic on the Ethernet LAN.

## **VLAN Settings**

	Settings	Group Table	For	warding Table					
iery Inter	val *								
25									
) - 600		SEC.							
APPLY									
C					0.040				
с					Q Sea	rch			_
c	VLAN ID	IGMP Snooping	Version	Static Router Port	Q Sea	rch	 _	_	

Query Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
20 - 600 seconds	Sets the query interval of the Querier function globally.	125 seconds

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Modify Existing VLAN Settings

Click the  $\checkmark$  icon to modify the settings of the corresponding VLAN.

*			
*			
Ŧ			
	*	• •	* *

#### IGMP Snooping

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Finabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the IGMP Snooping function for that particular VLAN.	Disabled

#### Version

Setting	Description	Factory Default
V1/V2, V3	If IGMP Snooping is enabled, select the IGMP Snooping version. V1/V2: Enable the Moxa Industrial Secure Router to send IGMP Snooping Version 1 and 2 queries. V3: Enable the Moxa Industrial Secure Router to send IGMP Snooping Version 3 queries.	V1/V2

Static Router Port						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
1/1, 1/2, 1/3, 1/4, 1/5,	If IGMP Snooping is enabled, select the ports that will connect					
1/6, 1/7, 1/8, 1/9, 1/10	to the multicast routers. These ports will receive all multicast	None				
checkbox	packets from the source.					

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

μ	

## NOTE

If a router or Layer 3 switch is connected to the network, it will act as the Querier. Consequently, this Querier option will be disabled on all Moxa Layer 2 switches.

If all switches on the network are Moxa Layer 2 switches, then only one Layer 2 switch will act as Querier.

#### **Group Table**

The IGMP Snooping Group Table displays the currently active IGMP groups that were detected for each VLAN.

VLAN Settings	Group	Table	Forwarding	Table				
LAN ID 1 🔸	uter Port	Static Multicat	st Router Port	Querier Connected Port	Act as ( No	Querier		
c					0	Search		
Group Address	Version	Filter Mode	Port	Source Address				

The information shown in the table includes:

- Auto Learned Multicast Router Port: This indicates that a multicast router connects to/sends packets from these port(s).
- Static Multicast Router Port: Displays the static multicast querier port(s).
- **Querier Connected Port:** Displays the port which is connected to the querier.
- Act as a Querier: Displays whether or not this VLAN is a querier (winner of an election).
- **Group Address:** Displays the multicast group addresses.
- Version: Displays the IGMP Snooping version.
- Filter Mode: Indicates the multicast source address is included or excluded. Displays Include or Exclude when IGMP v3 is enabled.
- Port: Displays the port which receives the multicast stream/the port the multicast stream is forwarded to.
- **Source Address:** Displays the multicast source address when IGMP v3 is enabled.

#### **Forwarding Table**

The Forwarding Table shows the multicast stream forwarding status for each VLAN. Select a VLAN ID from the drop-down menu to view the forwarding table for that VLAN ID.

LAN ID 1 👻			
C	earch		
Group Address Source Address Port Member Port			

- Group Address: Displays the multicast group IP address.
- **Source Address:** Displays the multicast source IP address.
- **Port:** Displays the port which receives the multicast stream.
- **Member port:** Displays the port the multicast stream is forwarded from.

## **Static Multicast Table**

From the Static Multicast Table, you can create static multicast entries.

8	O surviv	
	Q Search	
MAC Address Port		
Max. 128	ltems per page: 50 💌 0 of 0   < < .	5

#### NOTE

01:00:5E:XX:XX:XX on this page is the IP multicast MAC address. Activate IGMP Snooping for automatic classification.

Click the 🖿 icon to create a new static multicast entry.

Create Statio	c Multicast		
MAC Address *	0		
Port *	÷		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### MAC Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Integer	Enter the Static Multicast MAC address.	None
Port		

		Factory Default
1/1, 1/2, 1/3, 1/4, 1/5, 1/6, 1/7, 1/8, 1/9, 1/10 checkbox	Check the boxes to add the corresponding ports to the static multicast group.	None

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{CREATE}}$  to create the static multicast entry.

## **Network Interface**

## LAN

LAN		WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP		
8					Q Search	
	Name	Status	VLAN ID Alias	IP Address	Netmask	Virtual MAC
□ /	LAN	Enabled	1	192.168.127.254	255.255.255.0	-

#### Create a LAN Interface

Click the 🖿 icon to create a LAN interface.

Create LAN In	terface	Entry		
Name *				
	0/12			
VLAN Interface *				
Enabled	•			
VLAN ID *	•			
1 - 4093				
Alias				
	0/31	110-120		
IP Address *		Netmask.* 24 (255.255.255.0)	Ŧ	
Virtual MAC				
00:00:00:00:00:00				
			CANCEL	CREATE

Configure the following settings:

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 12 characters	Enter a name for the interface.	None
VLAN Interface		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the VLAN interface.	Enabled
VLAN ID		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 4093	Enter the VLAN ID.	None
Alias		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 31 characters	Enter an alias for the VLAN interface.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the IP address of the interface.	None
Netmask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet mask	Specify the subnet mask of the interface.	24 (255.255.255.0
Virtual MAC		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Virtual MAC	Enter the virtual MAC address of the interface.	00:00:00:00:00:00

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the new interface.



### NOTE

You can create up to 16 LAN interfaces by configuring each port with unique VLAN ID numbers.

#### **Delete a LAN Interface**

Select the item(s) you want to delete in the LAN Interface List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon. When prompted to confirm, click **DELETE** to delete the selected item(s).

#### Modify a LAN Interface

In the LAN Interface List, click the  $\checkmark$  icon of the entry you want to modify. When finished editing the attributes, click **APPLY** to save and apply your changes.

#### WAN

etwork Inte	erfa	ces		
LAN		WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP
VLAN ID				
LAN ID				
	100			
Connection				
		Connection Type		
Status		connection type.		

#### VLAN ID

#### VLAN ID

The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's WAN interface is configured by VLAN group. Ports with the same VLAN ID can be configured as one WAN interface.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select a VLAN ID. The Moxa Industrial Secure Router's WAN	
VLAN ID	interface is VLAN-based. All ports associated with the selected	None
	VLAN ID will act as a single WAN interface.	

#### Connection

There are three different connection types for the WAN interface: **Dynamic IP**, **Static IP**, and **PPPoE**. A detailed explanation of the configuration settings for each type is given below.

Status						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled				

Connection Type							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
Static IP, Dynamic IP, PPPoE	Choose the connection type. For more details and configuration settings for each type, refer to: <u>Dynamic IP Connection</u> <u>Static IP Connection</u> <u>PPPoE Connection</u> .	Dynamic IP					

## **Dynamic IP Connection**

LAN		WAN	Brid	lge	Secondary IP
VLAN ID					
VLAN ID					
	_				
Connection					
Status		Connection Type			
Enabled	٠	Dynamic IP	۲		
Directed Broadcat					
Disabled					
	-				
Source IP Overwrite					
Disabled	-				
PPTP Dialup <sup>Status</sup> Disabled	*				
P Address					
0.0.0.0		Username		Password	
VIPPE Encryption			0/30		0/30
None	*				
Virtual MAC					
Virtual MAC					
00:00:00:00:00	-				
DNS Settings					
		Secondary DNS Server		Tertiary DNS Serve	f/)
Primary DNS Server				0.0.0.0	

#### **Directed Broadcast**

Status							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the directed broadcasting.	Enabled					
Source IP Overwrite							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable source IP overwriting.	Enabled					

#### **PPTP Dialup**

The Point-to-Point Tunneling (PTP) protocol is used for Virtual Private Networks (VPN). Remote users can use PPTP to connect to private networks from public networks.

PPTP Connection		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the PPTP connection.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	0.0.0.0
Username		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 Characters	Enter the username used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the password used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
MPPE Encryption		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None/Encrypt	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None

#### Example

In this scenario, a remote user (IP: 10.10.10.10) wants to connect to the internal server (private IP: 30.30.30.10) via the PPTP protocol. The IP address of the PPTP server is 20.20.20.1. The necessary configuration settings are shown in the following figure:



#### **Virtual MAC**

#### Virtual MAC

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Virtual MAC Address	Specify the virtual MAC address.	00.00.00.00.00.00

#### **DNS Settings**

When using Dynamic IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optional DNS servers.

Primary DNS Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the primary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

Secondary DNS Server					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
IP Address	Enter the secondary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0			

#### Tertiary DNS Server

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the tertiary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

٠		

## ΝΟΤΕ

Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers from the PPPoE or DHCP server.

## **Static IP Connection**

LAN	WAN		Brie	dge	Secondary IP
VLAN ID					
VLAN ID					
1949-996-996 ##############################	*				
Connection Status	Connection	Type			
Enabled	▼ Static IP		-		
-					
Directed Broadcat	t				
Enabled					
Disabled	<u> </u>				
Source IP Overwrite					
	ion				
Disabled Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0	ion Netmas	k *	•	Gateway 0.0.0.0	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup		k *	•		
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0		k *	*		
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled		k *	*		
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address	Netmas	80	•	0.0.0.0	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address	Netmas	80		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0	Netmas	ne	0/30	0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption	Netmas	ne		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0	Netmas     Usernan	ne		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None	Netmas     Usernan	ne		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC	Netmas     Usernan	ne		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC	Netmas     Usernan	ne		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC Virtual MAC 00:00:00:00:00:00	Netmas     Usernan	ne		0.0.0.0 Password	
Address Informat IP Address 0.0.0.0 PPTP Dialup Status Disabled IP Address 0.0.0.0 MPPE Encryption None Virtual MAC	Netmas	ne		0.0.0.0 Password	0/30

#### **Directed Broadcast**

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the directed broadcasting.	Enabled

Source IP Overwrite						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable source IP overwriting.	Enabled				

#### **Address Information**

IP Address				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
IP Address	Specify the interface IP address.	0.0.0.0		
Subnet Mask				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
IP Address	Specify the subnet mask.	None		
Gateway				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
IP Address	Specify the gateway IP address.	0.0.0.0		

#### **PPTP Dialup**

The Point-to-Point Tunneling (PTP) protocol is used for Virtual Private Networks (VPN). Remote users can use PPTP to connect to private networks from public networks.

PPTP Connection		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the PPTP connection.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	0.0.0.0
Username		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 Characters	Enter the username used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the password used for dialing in to the PPTP service.	None
MPPE Encryption		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None/Encrypt	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None

#### Virtual MAC

Virtual MAC				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
Virtual MAC Address	Specify the virtual MAC address.	00.00.00.00.00.00		

#### **DNS Settings**

When using Dynamic IP or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optional DNS servers.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the primary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS	Server	
,		Factory Default
Secondary DNS Setting IP Address	Server Description Enter the secondary DNS IP address.	Factory D

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the tertiary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.



#### NOTE

Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers from the PPPoE or DHCP server.

### **PPPoE Connection**

LAN	WAN	Brid	lge	Secondary IP
LAN ID				
Connection				
Status	Connection Type			
Enabled	· PPPoE	•		
Directed Broadcat				
Inabled				
Disabled	•			
Source IP Overwrite				
Disabled				
PPPoE Dialup				
Jsername *	Password *		Host Name	
07	30	0/30		0/30
Virtual MAC				
/irtual MAC				
00:00:00:00:00				
DNS Settings				
Primary DNS Server	Secondary DNS Server		Tertiary DNS Server	
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0		0.0.0.0	

#### **Directed Broadcast**

Status					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the directed broadcasting.	Enabled			
Source IP Overwrite					
Source IP Overwrite					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			

#### **PPPoE Dialup**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the username used for logging in to the PPPoE server.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the password used for logging in to the PPPoE server.	None
Host Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 30 characters	Enter the user-defined hostname of the PPPoE server.	None
Virtual MAC Setting	Description	Factory Default
		-
Virtual MAC Address	Specify the virtual MAC address.	00.00.00.00.00
DNS Settings	P or PPPoE as the Connection Type, you can also configure optio	nal DNS servers.
Primary DNS Server		
Primary DNS Server Setting	Description	Factory Default
Primary DNS Server Setting	Description Enter the primary DNS IP address.	Factory Default
Primary DNS Server Setting IP Address	Enter the primary DNS IP address.	
Primary DNS Server	Enter the primary DNS IP address.	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the tertiary DNS IP address.	0.0.0.0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## NOTE

Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers from the PPPoE or DHCP server.

## **Bridge Group Interface**

When ports are set in the VLAN, the packets transmitted within these ports will be forwarded by the switching chip without being filtered by the firewall. However, in some scenarios, it is required to filter specific packets transmitted within the VLAN. By selecting ports as Bridge port, the packets transmitted between these ports will be checked by the firewall.

Similarly, when ports are associated with different VLANs, the packets transmitted within these VLANs will be routed by the switching chip locally, without being inspected by the firewall. However, in some scenarios, it is required to filter specific packets transmitted between VLANs. By adding VLANs to a Bridge Zone, the packets transmitted between these two zones will be checked by the firewall.

## Adding Ports/VLANs to the Bridge Interface

#### Port Base

Port-based bridge ports allow the router firewall to filter traffic moving between the assigned bridge ports. Select **Port-Base** as the Bridge type to create a port-based bridge.

LAN		WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP
Bridge IP Config	guration			
Bridge Type				
Port-Base	Οz	one-Base		
Name *				
BRG_LAN				
need as <del>of</del> the colored	7/12			
Status *				
Disabled	-			
	S.			
Goose Message Pass-1	Through			
Disabled	•			
IP Address *		Subnet Mask *		
192,168,126,254		24 (255.255.255.0)	*	

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 12 characters	Enter a name for the bridge interface.	None
Status		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the bridge interface.	Disabled

Goose Message Pass-Through						
Setting	Description					
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable GOOSE message passthrough.					
IP Address						

IF Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the interface.	None
Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the interface.	None

#### Bridge Member

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Port	Select the port that will act as the bridge port.	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Factory Default** 

Disabled

#### Zone base

A zone-based bridge allows the router firewall to filter traffic moving between all ports associated with the bridge zone.

Select **Zone-Base** as the Bridge type to create a zone-based bridge.

LAN	WAN	Bridge	Secondary IP
Bridge IP Configura	ation		
Bridge Type			
O Port-Base (	Zone-Base		
Name * ZONE_BRG			
	8/12		
Status *			
Enabled	*		
Goose Message Pass-Throu	ah		
Disabled	<b>T</b> .		
IP Address *	Subnet Mask *		
0.0.0.0	0 (0.0.0)	*	
Zone 1			
Name	Bridge Member		
Î	0/12		
Zone 2			
Name	Bridge Member		
	0/12		

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 12 characters	Enter a name for the bridge zone interface.	None
Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Disabled	
Goose Message Pass	s-Through	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable GOOSE message passthrough.	Disabled
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the interface.	None
Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the interface.	None

#### Zone 1/2

Name							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
Max. 12 characters	Enter a name for the bridge zone.	None					
Bridge Member							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
VLAN	Select the VLAN to assign to the corresponding bridge zone.	None					

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## NOTE

Even when the Bridge IP function is disabled (e.g. the bridge interface is disabled), the bridge interface will still exist in the system. Even if no ports are assigned to it, you can view the VLAN ID of the bridge interface in the VLAN table. To fully remove or disable the bridge interface, modify the PVID in the VLAN settings.

## **Secondary IP**

The Layer 3 interface can also act as a secondary IP. As shown in the example below, if the user needs additional IP addresses in the LAN segment but does not want to change the settings of the original interface IP/device, the secondary IP can be used to create a new network segment.



#### Create a Secondary IP

Click 
to create a secondary IP.

Create Secon	dary IP	Entry		
Interface *	•			
IP Address *		Netmask *		
			CANCEL	CREATE

Configure the following settings:

Interface		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Interface	Select the interface to create a secondary IP for.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary interface.	None
Netmask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the secondary interface.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to activate the secondary interface.

#### **Delete a Secondary IP**

Select the interface from the Secondary IP List and click  $\widehat{\blacksquare}$  to delete it.

L	ayer 3	Interfac	es										
	LAN		WAN	Seconda	ry IP								
	Î					<b>Q</b> Sea	rch						
		Interface	VLAN ID	IP Address	Netmask		Туре						
	Z	LAN	1	192.168.127.11	255.255.2	55.240	Manual						
	Max 256					Ite	ems per page: 50	<b>~</b>	1 – 1 of 1	Κ	<	>	>

#### Modify a Secondary IP

Click 🖍 to modify the secondary IP entry. When finished, click **APPLY** to save and apply your changes.

From the **Redundancy** section, you can configure the **Layer 2 Redundancy**, and **Layer 3 Redundancy** settings.



## Layer 2 Redundancy

From the Layer 2 Redundancy section, the following functions can be configured: Spanning Tree, and Turbo Ring V2.



## **Spanning Tree**

From the Spanning Tree screen, you can configure general Spanning Tree settings and view the status of the current Spanning Tree configuration.

## **General Settings**

panning T	ree							
General		Status						
Status * Enabled	•							
Bridge Priority * 32768	*	Forward Delay Time *		Hello Time *		Max Age * 20		
		4 - 30	sec.	1 - 2	Sec.	6 - 40	sec.	

						Q Search
	Port	Enable	Edge	Priority	Path Cost	
i	1/1	Disabled	False	128	20000	
i	1/2	Disabled	False	128	20000	
i	1/3	Disableri	False	128	20000	
i	1/4	Disabled	False	128	20000	
1	1/5	Disabled	False	128	20000	
i	1/6	Disabled	False	128	20000	
1	1/7	Disabled	False	128	20000	
1	1/8	Disabled	False	128	20000	
i	1/9	Disabled	False	128	20000	
i	1/10	Disabled	False	128	20000	
						1 - 10 of 10

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Spanning Tree Protocol.	Enabled
Bridge priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 61440, multiples of 4096	Specify the bridge priority. A lower number represents a higher priority. A device with a higher bridge priority has a greater chance of being established as the root of the Spanning Tree topology.	32768
Forwarding Delay Tim	e	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
4 to 30 seconds	Specify the forwarding delay time. This is the amount of time this device will wait before checking to see if it should change to a different state.	15

Hello time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 2 seconds	Specify the interval at which the device will send out "hello" messages. The root of the Spanning Tree topology periodically sends out a "hello" message to other devices on the network to check if the topology is healthy.	2
Max. Age		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
6 to 40 seconds	Specify the maximum age duration. If the device is not the root, and it has not received a hello message from the root within the specified "Max. Age" time, the device will reconfigure itself as a root. Once two or more devices on the network are recognized as a root, the devices will renegotiate to set up a new Spanning Tree topology.	20

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Editing Spanning Tree for a Port**

To edit the Spanning Tree settings for a specific port, click the 🖍 icon next to the port you want to modify.

Edit Port 1/1	Settings			
Enable *				
Disabled	•			
Edge *				
False	•			
Priority *				
128	•			
Path Cost *				
20000		0		
0-20000000				
			CANCEL	APPLY

#### Enable

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the port as a node in the Spanning Tree topology.	Disabled

## 

#### NOTE

It is recommended to disable Spanning Tree Protocol on the port if it is connected to a device (PLC, RTU, etc.) as opposed to network equipment, as this may cause unnecessary negotiation.

Edge			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Force Edge	The port is fixed as an edge port and will always be in the		
TOICE Luge	forwarding state.	False	
False	The port is not an edge port.		

Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 240, multiples of 16	Specify the port priority. A lower number indicates a higher priority.	128
Path Cost		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 20000000	Specify the path cost. A higher cost indicates that this port is less suitable as a node for the Spanning Tree topology. If set to 0, the path cost will be automatically calculated based	20000

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### Status

The Status page shows the Spanning Tree root and port information.

Spanni	ng Tre	е			
Gene	ral	St	atus		
Root Info	rmation				c
G					Q Search
Port	Enable	Edge	Priority	Path Cost	Port State
1/1	Disabled	False	128	20000	922
1/2	Disabled	False	128	20000	-
1/3	Disabled	False	128	20000	ш.
1/4	Disabled	False	128	20000	100
1/5	Disabled	False	128	20000	-
1/6	Disabled	False	128	20000	
1/7	Disabled	False	128	20000	-
1/8	Disabled	False	128	20000	
1/9	Disabled	False	128	20000	-
1/10	Disabled	False	128	20000	
					1 - 10 of 10

At the top of the page, the user can check the **Root Information** of this function. You will see:

#### Root State

This shows if this switch is the Root of the Spanning Tree (the root is determined automatically). At the bottom of the page, the user can check the **Status** of this function.

#### Port State

Indicates the current Spanning Tree status of the port. **Forwarding** for normal transmission or **Blocking** to indicate the port is blocking transmissions.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the Spanning Tree status of each port.

## **Turbo Ring V2**

From the Turbo Ring V2 screen, you can configure general Turbo Ring V2 settings and view the status of the current Turbo Ring V2 configuration.

## **General Settings**

<b>Furbo</b>	Ring	V2				
Ge	eneral	Statu	s			
Status * Disable	d	•				
APPLY	ettings					
	Ring ID	Status	Master	Ring Port 1	Ring Port 2	
i	Ring 1	Disabled	Disabled	1/7	1/8	
1	Ring 2	Disabled	Disabled	1/5	1/6	
						1 – 2 of 2
Ring Co Status * Disablei	oupling Se	ettings •				
	g Mode					
Primary Po 1/3	ort	-				
APPLY	r					

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Turbo Ring V2.	Disabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Ring Settings**

In the Ring Settings table, click the  $\checkmark$  icon of the entry you want to modify.

Enabled				
Disabled	•			
Master				
Disabled	*			
Ring Port 1		Ring Port 2		
1/7	100	1/8	*	

#### Enabled

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable this Turbo Ring.	Disabled

#### NOTE

To set up a Dual-Ring architecture, you must enable both Ring 1 and Ring 2.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable this Ring as the Master ring.	Disabled
Ding Dort 1		

#### Ring Port 1

		Factory Default
Select the port from the drop-down list	Select the port to act as the 1st redundant port.	1/7

#### Ring Port 2

		Factory Default
Select the port from the	Select the port to act as the 2nd redundant port.	1/8
drop-down menu	Select the port to act as the 2nd redundant port.	1/0

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

### **Ring Coupling Settings**

Ring Coupling S	ettings		
Enabled	•		
Coupling Mode			
Dual Homing	•		
Primary Port *			
1/3	-	Backup Port *	-

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable this device as a Ring Coupler.	Disabled

Coupling Mode			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Dual Homing	Set the Coupling mode to Dual Homing.		
Backup Path	Set the Coupling mode to Backup Path.	Dual Homing	
Primary Path	Set the Coupling mode to Primary.		

If the Coupling Mode is set to Dual Homing, configure the following settings:

#### Primary Port

		Factory Default
Select the port from the list	Select the port that will act as the backup port.	1/3

#### Backup Port

		Factory Default
Select the port from the	Select the port that will act as the backup port.	None
list	beleet the port that will det us the backup port.	None

If the Coupling Mode is set to Backup Path or Primary, configure the following settings:

Ring Coupling Settings	<b>Ring Coupling Settings</b>	
Status *	Status *	
Enabled -	Enabled -	
Coupling Mode	Coupling Mode	
Backup Path 🔹	Primary Path	
Coupling Port *	Coupling Port *	
1/3 👻	1/3 👻	

Coupling Port			
		Factory Default	
Select the port from the list	Select the port that will act as the coupling port.	1/3	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.
## Status

From the **Status** tab, you can view the current Ring settings and the Ring Coupling Status.

	al Sta	itus				
ng Statu	S					
3				Q Searc	h	
Ring ID	Master ID	Status	Master	Ring Port 1	Ring Port 2	
Ring 1	00:00:00:00:00	Disabled				
Ring 2	00.00.00.00.00.00	Disabled			-	
						1 - 2 of 2
ng Coup	ling Status					
3				<b>Q</b> Searc	h	
					Backup Port	
Coupling	Mode Primary Port					

#### **Ring Status**

Refer to the following table for a detailed description for each item of the Ring status.

Item	Description
Ring ID	The ID number of the Ring.
Master ID	The MAC address of the Ring Master.
Status	Healthy: The Ring and the ports are working properly.
Status	Break: One or more Rings are broken.
Master	The device is the Master/Slave in this Ring.
Ring Port 1	The first Ring port.
Ring Port 2	The second Ring port.

#### **Ring Coupling Status**

Refer to the following table for a detailed description for the status of Coupling Mode and Coupling Port.

Item	Description
Coupling Mode	Primary: The main path of Ring Coupling. Backup: The backup path of Ring Coupling.
Coupling Port	The port of the Ring Coupling.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the Turbo Ring V2 status.

# Layer 3 Redundancy

From the Layer 3 Redundancy section you can configure VRRP Settings.

Layer 3 Redundancy	^
VRRP	

## VRRP

**Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)** helps solve some problems with static configurations. VRRP enables a group of routers to form a single virtual router with a virtual IP address. The LAN clients can then be configured with the virtual router's virtual IP address as their default gateway. This virtual router consisting of a group of routers is also known as a VRRP group.

## Settings

		Sta	itus									
iP												
abled	•											
sion												
rsion 3	*											
a constant and												
APPLY												
									1722 27 17			
0									Q Searc	1		
	able Inc	lex Ir	nterface	IP Address	VIP	VRID	Prio.	Adv int(ms)	Preemption	Accept	Tracking Interface	Tracking Ping
En En												0 ot 0
<b>En</b> Max. 16												

#### VRRP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable VRRP functionality.	Disabled
Version		
Version Setting	Description	Factory Default

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Create a Virtual Router**

Click the **•** icon to create a new virtual router.

Create Virtual Router	r				
VRRP Interface Setting	Entry				
Enable					
Disabled •					
Interface					
LAN -					
			2010/02/02/02		
Matural ID *	Virtual Router ID *		Priority.*		
Virtual IP *	1		100		
THE COTTON FROM MILLION FROM F	1 - 255		1 - 254		
Accept Mode Enabled -					
Procession	Descent Descent				
Preemption Enabled	Preempt Delay * 120				
	10 - 300				
Advertisement Interval *	10-300	Sec.			
100					
10 - 30000 millisec.					
10-30000 Hillisec.					
VRRP Tracking					
Native Interface Tracking					
Disabled					
Object Ping Tracking					
Target IP					
Leave empty or 0.0.0.0 to disable					
Interval *	Timeout *				
1	3				
1 - 100 sec.	1 - 100	sec.			
Success Count *	Failure Count *				
3	3				
1-100	1 - 100				
				CANCEL	CREATE

## VRRP Interface Setting Entry

Enable		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the virtual router	Disabled

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Setting	Select the interface to enable VRRP for, either the LAN or WAN	
_AN, WAN	interface.	LAN
/irtual IP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the virtual router IP address. The virtual IP must be	
IP Address	the same subnet as the real IP address.	None
IF AUULESS	Industrial secure routers in the same VRRP group must be in	None
	the same subnet.	
/irtual Router ID		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the virtual router ID, which is used to assign the	
1 to 255	router to a VRRP group. The Industrial secure routers that	1
1 (0 255	operate as master/backup should have the same ID. Each	1
	interface supports one virtual router ID.	
Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the VRRP interface priority. A higher number	
1 +- 254	represents a higher priority, with 254 being the highest. If	100
1 to 254	multiple industrial secure routers have the same priority, the	100
	router with the highest IP address will have priority.	
Accept Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
-	Enable or disable Accept Mode. When enabled, the virtual	
Enabled or Disabled	router with the role of Master will allow others to access its	Enabled
	own virtual IP address.	
Preemption		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Jotting	Enable or disable preemption. If enabled, preemption will	
Enabled or Disabled	decide if the master will retake authority or not after being	Enabled
	unavailable.	Lindbled
Preempt Delay		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	If Preemption is enabled, specify the preemption delay. If	
10 to 300 seconds	enabled, the master will wait for the specified period of time	120
	before retaking authority back in order to prevent the master	
	from acting before the network connection is ready.	
Advertisement Inter		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the advertisement interval. This determines the	
10 to 30000 seconds	interval (in seconds) at which the master will send packets to	100
	all slave device to inform them who the master device is.	
VRRP Tracking		
-		
Native Interface Tra	cking	
<i>Native Interface Trac</i> Setting	Cking Description	Factory Default

## NOTE

Make sure the WAN IP is configured correctly before enabling the "Native Interface Tracking" function.

## **Object Ping Tracking**

Target	ΤD
larget	11

Target IP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the Target IP to verify if the connection to the destination (e.g. control center) is working. Leave this blank or enter 0.0.0.0 to disable this function.	None
Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 100 seconds	Specify the interval at which the router will ping the target.	1
Timeout		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 100	Specify the timeout duration. This indicates the time the router will wait for a response before timing out.	3
Success Count		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	3	
Failure Count		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the failure count. This indicates how many times the	
Enabled or Disabled	target can fail to respond before the router considers the	3

When finished, click **CREATE** to save and apply your configuration.

connection not working.

## **VRRP Status**

The Status screen shows a table with the current VRRP settings status.

VRRP						
Settings	Status					
G					Q Search	
Enable	Index	Interface	VRID	Status	Master Address	
Mex. 16						0 of 0

Click the  $\mathbf{C}$  icon to refresh the information.

From the **Network Service** section the following functions can be configured: **DHCP Server**, and **Dynamic DNS**.



# **DHCP Server**

From the DHCP Server screen, you can enable the DHCP and configure the various DHCP Server modes.

## **General Settings**

HCP Server	•			
General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based IP Assignment	Lease Table
Mode				

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled, DHCP/MAC-based assignment, Port-based IP assignment	Select the DHCP Server Mode. Each mode has its own configuration settings. Refer to the following sections for more information: <u>DHCP</u> <u>MAC-based IP Assignment</u> <u>Port-based IP Assignment</u>	Disabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## DHCP

The Industrial Secure Router provides DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server functionality for LAN interfaces. When configured, the Industrial Secure Router will automatically assign an IP address from a user-configured IP address pool to connected Ethernet devices.

#### **DHCP Server** General DHCP MAC-based IP Assignment Port-based IP Assignment Lease Table Q Search Ð Status Pool IP Range Subnet Mask Lease Time (min.) Default Gateway NTP Server DNS Server 1 DNS Server 2 Max. 16 0 010 0 < >

## **Create a DHCP Server Pool**

Click • to create a new DHCP Server Pool.

Create DHCP Serve			
Status -	8 ≠2		
Starting IP Address *	Subnet Mask *	*	
Ending IP Address *	=1		
Default Gateway	25		
Lease Time * 1440			
5 - 99999 min			
DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2		
NTP Server	7.2		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disable	d Enable or disable DHCP server functionality.	Disabled
Starting IP Addre	255	
Starting IP Addre	Description	Factory Default

Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for DHCP clients.	None
Ending IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the ending IP address of the DHCP IP pool.	None
Default Gateway		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the default gateway for DHCP clients.	None
Lease Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5 to 99999 minutes	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server.	1440
DNS Server 1		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
DNS Server 2		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
NTP Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the NTP server for DHCP clients.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.



## NOTE

The DHCP Server is only available for LAN interfaces.

The DHCP pool's Starting/Ending IP Address must be in the same LAN subnet.

#### **Delete a DHCP Server Pool**

Click  $\widehat{\blacksquare}$  next to the DHCP Server pool entry you want to delete.

#### **Modify a DHCP Server Pool**

Click *I* to next to the DHCP Server Pool you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **MAC-based IP Assignment**

Use the Static DHCP list to ensure that devices connected to the Industrial Secure Router always use the same IP address. The static DHCP list matches IP addresses to MAC addresses.

General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based	d IP Assignment	Lease Table				
Ð						Q	Search		
🗍 Statu	s Hostname	IP Address	Subnet Mask	MAC Address	Lease Time (min.)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server

For example, a device named "Device-01" was added to the Static DHCP list, with a static IP address set to 192.168.127.101 and MAC address set to 00:09:ad:00:aa:01. When a device with a MAC address of 00:09:ad:00:aa:01 is connected to the Industrial Secure Router, the Industrial Secure Router will offer the IP address 192.168.127.101 to this device.

#### **Create a MAC-based IP Entry**

Click 🖬 to create a new MAC-based IP entry. The hostname, IP address, and MAC address must be different from any existing MAC-based IP entries.

Create Entry			
Status •			
Hostname *			
0 / 63			
IP Address *	Subnet Mask *	•	
MAC Address *			
Default Gateway			
Lease Time * 1440			
5-99999 min.			
DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2		
NTP Server			
		CANCEL	CREATE

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable MAC-based IP assignment functionality.	None
Hostname		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 63 characters	Enter a hostname for the device.	None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the device.	None
Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the device.	None
MAC Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
MAC Address	Specify the MAC address of the device.	None
Default Gateway		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the default gateway of the device.	None
Lease Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5-99999 minutes	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server.	1440
DNS Server 1		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
DNS Server 2		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for DHCP clients.	None
NTP Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the NTP server for DHCP clients.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

#### **Delete a MAC-based IP Entry**

Select the entry from the list and click  $\hat{\blacksquare}$ .

## Modify a MAC-based IP Entry

Click 🖍 next to the MAC-based IP entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Port-based IP Assignment**

General	DHC	P	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based IP	P Assignment	Lease Table	
Ð						Q Search	
				Lease Time			

## **Create a Port-based IP Entry**

Click 
to create a new port-based IP entry.

Create Entry				
Status	•			
Port*	•			
IP Address *		Subnet Mask *	*	
Default Gateway				
Lease Time * 1440				
5 - 99999	mîn.			
DNS Server 1		DNS Server 2		
NTP Server				
			CANCEL	CREATE

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Port-based IP assignment functionality.	None
Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Port	Select the physical port on the device to associate the I	P with. None
IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the connected device.	None

Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for the connected device.	None
Default Gateway		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the default gateway for the connected device.	None
Lease Time		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5-99999 minutes	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server.	1440
DNS Server 1		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for the connected device.	None
DNS Server 2		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for the connected device.	None
NTP Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the NTP server for the connected device.	None
When finished, click <b>(</b>	CREATE to save your configuration.	
Delete a Port-b	ased IP Entry	
Select the entry from	the list and click <b>I</b> .	
Modify a Port-b	ased IP Entry	

Click 🖍 to next to the Port-based IP entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Lease Table**

The Lease Table provides an overview of the current DHCP clients.

General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assig	pnment	Port-based IP As:	signment	 Lease 1	Table	_
c			Q Sea	rch				
Hostname	IP Address	MAC Address	Time L	eft				

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the table.

# **Dynamic DNS**

Dynamic DNS (Domain Name Server) allows you to use a domain name to connect to the Industrial Secure Router. The Industrial Secure Router can connect to four free DNS servers and register a domain name on these servers.

Service *	
Disabled	*
Service Name	
Username	0/45
Password	0 / 45
Confirm Password	19
Domain Name	U7 45

Service		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled,		
freedns.afraid.org,		
www.3322.org,	Disable or select a DNS server.	Disabled
DynDns.org,		
NO-IP.com		

#### Service Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	The DNS server's name.	None

#### Username

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Enter the DNS server username.	None

#### Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Enter the DNS server password.	None

#### **Confirm Password**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Confirm the DNS server password.	None

#### Domain name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 45 characters	Enter the DNS server's domain name	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

From the **Routing** section, you can configure the **Unicast Route**, **Multicast Route**, and **Broadcast Forwarding** settings.



# **Unicast Route**

The Industrial Secure Router supports two routing methods: static routing and dynamic routing. Dynamic routing makes use of RIP V1/V1c/V2. You can either choose one routing method or combine the two methods to establish your routing table. A routing entry includes the following items: the destination address, the next hop address (which is the next router along the path to the destination address), and a metric that represents the cost to access a different network.

From the **Unicast Route** section, the following functions can be configured: **Static Routes, RIP, OSPF,** and **Routing Table**.

Unicast Route	^
Static Routes	
RIP	
OSPF	~
Routing Table	

## **Static Routes**

The Static Routing page is used to configure the Industrial Secure Router's static routing table.

Static routes allow you to specify the next hop (or router) that the Industrial Secure Router forwards data to for a specific subnet. The Static Route settings will be added to the routing table and stored on the Industrial Secure Router.

Ð			c	<b>L</b> Search					
	Status	Name	Destination Address	Netmask	Next Ho	)	Metric		

#### **Create a Static Route**

Click 
to create a new static route.

Create new static rou	ıte		
Status *			
Name *			
Destination Address *	Subnet Mask *	*	
Next Hop *	Metric *		
	1 - 254		- contractor
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the static route.	None

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 10 characters	Enter a name for the static route.	None
Destination Address		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Destination address	Specify the destination IP address.	None

#### Subnet Mask

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Subnet mask	Specify the subnet mask for this IP address.	None

#### Next Hop

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Next hop IP address	Specify the next router on the path to the destination IP.	None

#### Metric

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 254	Specify the metric value for the route.	None

Click **CREATE** to add the entry to the Static Routing Table.

#### **Delete a Static Route**

Select the entry from the list and click  $\mathbf{I}$ .

## Modify an Existing Static Route

Click 🖍 next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **RIP (Routing Information Protocol)**

RIP is a distance-vector routing protocol that employs the hop count as a routing metric. RIP prevents routing from looping by implementing a limit on the number of hops allowed in a path from the source to a destination.

The **RIP** page is used to set up the RIP parameters.

<sup>atus *</sup> sable	d	-						
rsion *		×						
distri	ibute			÷				
	/							
APPL	<b>/</b>							
	<b>*</b>				<b>Q</b> , Search			
	Status	Interface	IP Address	VLAN ID	<b>Q</b> Search			
APPL C	_	Interface	IP Address 192.168.127.254	VLAN ID 1	Q Search			

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the RIP protocol.	Disabled
Version		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
V1/V2	Select the RIP protocol version.	V2

#### Redistribute

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Connected	Enable the Redistributed Connected function.	
Static	Enable the Redistributed Static Route function. The entries that are set in a static route will be re-distributed if this option is enabled.	None
OSPF	Enable the Redistributed OSPF function.	

#### Modify an Existing RIP Entry

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit RIP		
Status *		
Disabled	*	
Interface		
LAN		
IP Address		
192.168.127.254	4	
VLAN ID		
1		
		CANCEL

## **OSPF (Dynamic Routing With Open Shortest Path First)**

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) is a dynamic routing protocol for use on Internet Protocol (IP) networks. Specifically, it is a link-state routing protocol, and falls into the group of interior gateway protocols, operating within a single autonomous system. As a link-state routing protocol, OSPF establishes and maintains neighbor relationships in order to exchange routing updates with other routers. The neighbor relationship table is called an adjacency database in OSPF. OSPF forms neighbor relationships only with the routers directly connected to it. In order to form a neighbor relationship between two routers, the interfaces used to form the relationship must be in the same area. An interface can only belong to a single area. With OSPF enabled, Industrial Secure router is able to exchange routing information with other L3 switches or routers more efficiently in a large system.

This section describes the configurations for OSPF Settings and OSPF Status.



## **OSPF Settings**

#### **General Settings**

The Industrial Secure router has an OSPF router ID, written in the dot-decimal format (e.g., 1.2.3.4) of an IP address. This ID must be established for every OSPF instance. If not explicitly configured, the default ID (0.0.0.0) will be regarded as the router ID. Since the router ID is an IP address, it does not need to be part of any routable subnet on the network.

## **OSPF Settings**

General		Area	Interface	Aggregation	Virtual Link
OSPF Settings * Disabled	•				
Router ID * 0.0.0.0		Current Router ID 0.0.0.0	0		
Redistribute	•				
APPLY					

#### **OSPF** Settings

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the global OSPF function.	Disabled

#### Router ID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Router ID	Specify the router ID.	0.0.0.0

## Current Router ID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Current Router ID	Shows the current ID of the Industrial Secure Router.	0.0.0.0

#### Redistributed

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Connected	Entries learned from the directly connected interfaces will be redistributed.	None
Static	Entries set in a static route will be redistributed.	None
RIP	Entries learned from through RIP will be redistributed.	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Area Settings**

An OSPF domain is divided into areas that are labeled with 32-bit area identifiers, commonly written in the dot-decimal notation of an IPv4 address. Areas are used to divide a large network into smaller network areas. They are logical groupings of hosts and networks, including the routers connected to a particular area. Each area maintains a separate link state database whose information may be summarized towards the rest of the network by the connecting router. Thus, the topology of an area is unknown outside of the area. This reduces the amount of routing traffic between parts of an autonomous system.

tings									
	Area	Interface	Aggregation	Virtu	al Link				
			Q Search						
Area ID	Area Type	Metric							
			Items per page: 50	•	0 of 0	1<	<	>	>1
		Area	Area Interface	Area     Interface     Aggregation       Q Search	Area Interface Aggregation Virtu	Area     Interface     Aggregation     Virtual Link       Q Search       Area ID     Area Type     Metric	Area     Interface     Aggregation     Virtual Link       Q Search       Area ID     Area Type     Metric	Area     Interface     Aggregation     Virtual Link       Q Search       Area ID     Area Type     Metric	Area     Interface     Aggregation     Virtual Link       Q Search

#### **Create a New Area**

Create Area
Area ID \*
Area Type \*
Normal

CANCEL
CREATE

Click the **f** icon to create a new area.

#### Area ID

Description	Factory Default
Specify the Area ID which defines the areas that this Industrial Secure Router connects to	None

Area Type		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Normal, Stub, NSSA	Select the area type.	Normal

#### Metric

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	If the Area Type is Stub or NSSA, specify the metric.	1

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

#### Modify an Existing Area ID

Click the 🖍 icon next to the area you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Area ID**

Select the item(s) in the Area ID List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and then click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

## **Interface Settings**

Before using OSPF, you need to assign an interface for each area.

Genera		Area	Interface	Aggregation	Virtual Link					
٥							<b>Q</b> Search			
	Interface	IP Address	Area ID	Hello Interval (sec.)	Dead Interval (sec.)	Priority	Auth Type	Auth Key	MD5 Key ID	Metr

## **Create a New Interface**

Click the 🛨 icon to create a new OSPF Interface.

Create Interfa	ace			
Interface *	٠			
Area ID *	•			
Priority * 1				
0 - 255				
Hello Interval *		Dead Interval *		
10		40		
1 - 65535	Sec	1 - 65535	sec	
Auth Type *				
None	٣			
Metric.*				
1				
1 - 65535				
			CANCEL	CREATE

Interface		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
LAN, WAN	Select an interface to assign to the area.	None
Area ID		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Area ID	Specify the Area ID.	None
Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 255	Specify the priority.	1

	Description	Eactory Dofault
Setting	Description Specify the Hello message interval. Hello packets are packets that an OSPF process sends to its OSPF neighbors to maintain	Factory Default
1 to 65535 seconds	connectivity with those neighbors. The hello packets are sent at a configurable interval (in seconds). The value of all hello	10
	intervals must be the same within a network.	
Dead Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
L to 65535 seconds	Specify the Dead interval. The dead interval is a configurable interval (in seconds), and defaults to four times the value of the hello interval.	40
Auth Type		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
None, Simple, MD5	Select an authentication method. OSPF authentication provides the flexibility of authenticating OSPF neighbors. Users can enable authentication to exchange routing update information in a secure manner. OSPF authentication can either be none, simple, or MD5. Authentication does not need to be configured. If it is configured, all Industrial Secure Routers on the same segment must have the same password and authentication method.	None
Auth Key		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
) to 8	Specify the authentication key. If the Auth Type is Simple the auth key is a pure-text password. If the Auth Type is MD5 the auth key is encrypted password.	None
1D5 Key ID		
-	Description	Factory Default
<b>MD5 Key ID</b> Setting 1 to 255	<b>Description</b> MD5 authentication provides higher security than plain text authentication. This method uses the MD5 to calculate a hash value from the contents of the OSPF packet and the authentication key. This hash value is transmitted in the packet, along with a key ID.	Factory Default
Setting	MD5 authentication provides higher security than plain text authentication. This method uses the MD5 to calculate a hash value from the contents of the OSPF packet and the authentication key. This hash value is transmitted in the	
Setting 1 to 255	MD5 authentication provides higher security than plain text authentication. This method uses the MD5 to calculate a hash value from the contents of the OSPF packet and the authentication key. This hash value is transmitted in the packet, along with a key ID. <b>Description</b>	
<b>Setting</b> 1 to 255 <b>Metric</b>	MD5 authentication provides higher security than plain text authentication. This method uses the MD5 to calculate a hash value from the contents of the OSPF packet and the authentication key. This hash value is transmitted in the packet, along with a key ID.	None
Setting 1 to 255 Metric Setting 1 to 65535	MD5 authentication provides higher security than plain text authentication. This method uses the MD5 to calculate a hash value from the contents of the OSPF packet and the authentication key. This hash value is transmitted in the packet, along with a key ID. <b>Description</b>	None Factory Default

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Delete an Existing Interface**

Select the item(s) in the Interface List, click the  $\hat{\mathbf{I}}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

## **Aggregation Settings**

Each OSPF area, which consists of a set of interconnected subnets and traffic, is handled by routers attached to two or more areas, known as Area Border Routers (ABRs). With the OSPF aggregation function, users can combine groups of routes with common addresses into a single routing table entry. The main purpose of this function is to reduce the size of routing tables.

#### **OSPF Settings** Interface Virtual Link General Area Aggregation ÷ Q Search IP Address Subnet Mask Area ID Max 5 0 of 0 Items per page: 50 $|\langle$ $\geq$ < >

#### Create a New OSPF Aggregation

Create Aggregation

 Area ID \*
 •

 IP Address \*
 Subnet Mask \*
 •

 CANCEL
 CREATE

Click the 🖪 icon to create a new OSPF Area Aggregation.

#### Area ID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Area ID	Select the Area ID that you want to configure.	None

IP Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the IP address of the area.	None

Subnet Mask		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 (128.0.0.0) to 31 (255.255.255.254)	Select the network subnet mask.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

#### Modify an Existing Aggregation

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Aggregation**

Select the item(s) in the Aggregation List, click the  $\blacksquare$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

## **Virtual Link Settings**

All areas in an OSPF autonomous system must be physically connected to the backbone area (Area 0.0.0.0). However, this is impossible in some cases. For those cases, users can create a virtual link to connect to the backbone through a non-backbone area or to connect two parts of a partitioned backbone through a nonbackbone area.

# OSPF Settings General Area Interface Aggregation Virtual Link

٠			Q Search
	Area ID	Router ID	
Max 5			ttems per page: 50 👻 0 of 0  < < > )

#### Create a Virtual Link

Click the **1** icon to create a new virtual link.

eate Virtua	ll Link		
Area ID *	•		
Router ID *			
			CANCEL

#### Area ID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Area ID	Select the Area ID which defines the areas that this Industrial Secure Router connect to.	None

#### Router ID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Router ID	Specify the Industrial Secure Router's ID.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

#### Modify an Existing Virtual Link

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Virtual Link**

Select the item(s) in the Virtual Link List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

## **OSPF Status**

## Neighbor

The Neighbor table shows all current OSPF neighbors.

Neighbor	Database		
c			Q Search
Neighbor ID	Priority State	IP Address	Interface Name
Neignbor ID	Priority State	IP Address	Items per page: 50    0 of 0  < < >

Click the  $\mathbf{C}$  icon to refresh the table.

## Database

The Database table shows the current OSPF LSA information.

OSPF Statu	S								
Neighbor	Databas	e							
c			Q Sec	arch					
LSA Type	Area	Link ID	ADV Router	Age (sec.)	Route				
				Items per page: 50	▼ 0 of 0	К	<	>	>

Click the  $\mathbf{C}$  icon to refresh the table.

# **Multicast Route**

From the **Multicast Route** section, the following functions can be configured: **Multicast Route**, and **Static Multicast Route**.



# **Multicast Route Settings**

The industrial secure router supports one multicast routing protocol: Static Multicast Route.

Multicast	Route Settings	
Mode * Disabled	•	
APPLY		

#### Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Static Multicast Route, Disabled	Disable multicast routing or select which multicast routing protocol to use (Static multicast route).	Disabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Static Multicast Route**

The Static Multicast Route table shows all static multicast entries.

Ð				Q Search			
	Status	Group Address	Source Address	Inbound Interface	Outbound Interface		

## **Create a Static Multicast Route**

Click the 🛨 icon to create a new Static Multicast Route.

*

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the static multicast route.	Enabled

#### Group Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default							
IP address	Specify the group IP address	None							

#### Source Address Type

Setting	g Description	
Any	Set the source to any IP address.	Anv
Specify Source	Set the source to a specified IP address only.	АПУ

#### Source Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	If the Source Address Type is Specify Source, enter the source IP address.	None

#### Inbound Interface

Setting	Description	Factory Default
LAN, WAN	Select which interface the broadcast packet will come from.	None

#### **Outbound Interface**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
LAN, WAN	Select which interface the broadcast packet will pass through.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## Modify an Existing Static Multicast Route

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Static Multicast Route**

Select the item(s) in the Static Multicast Route List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and then click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **Broadcast Forwarding**

In some scenarios, users may have to issue broadcast packets to query all the devices on the network for data collecting, such as Modbus devices. However, normally, broadcast packets cannot pass through the router. Broadcast Forwarding allows users to configure which interface and UDP port numbers broadcast packets will pass through.

sabled	•						
APPLY							
٥			QS	earch			 
	Inbound Interface	Outbound Interface	UDP Port				

#### Status

Setting	Factory Default	
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Broadcast Forwarding. Enable this function to allow broadcast packets to pass through the Industrial Secure Router.	Disabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Create a Broadcast Forwarding Entry**

Click the 🖬 icon to create a new Broadcast Forwarding entry.

Create Broadcast	Forw	arding		
Inbound Interface *	*			
Outbound Interface *	•			
UDP Port *		0		
			CANCEL	CREATE

Inbound Interface			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
LAN, WAN	Select which interface the broadcast packet will come from.	None	
Outbound Interface			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
LAN, WAN	None		
UDP Port			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
UDP Port Number	Specify the service port number. You can enter multiple port numbers up to a total of 8 ports. For example, entering "67, 68, 520, 1701" means the device will listen on UDP ports 67, 68, 520, and 1701.	None	

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## Modify the Existing Broadcast Forwarding

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete the Existing Broadcast Forwarding**

Select the item(s) in the Broadcast Forwarding List, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **NAT Concept**

NAT (Network Address Translation) is a common security function for changing the IP address during Ethernet packet transmission. When the user wants to hide the internal IP address (LAN) from the external network (WAN), the NAT function will translate the internal IP address to a specific IP address, or an internal IP address range to one external IP address. The benefits of using NAT include:

- The N-1 or port forwarding NAT function to hide the internal IP address of a critical network or device to increase the level of security of industrial network applications.
- The Industrial Secure Router uses the same private IP address for different, but identical, groups of Ethernet devices. For example, 1-to-1 NAT makes it easy to duplicate or extend identical production lines.



## ΝΟΤΕ

The NAT function will check if incoming or outgoing packets match the policy. It starts by checking the packet against the first policy (Index=1); if the packet matches this policy, the Industrial Secure Router will translate the address immediately and then start checking the next packet. If the packet does not match this policy, it will check with the next policy.

## NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router supports a maximum of 512 NAT policies.

# **1-to-1 NAT Overview**

If the internal device and external device need to communicate with each other, choose 1-to-1 NAT, which offers bi-directional communication (N-to-1 and Port forwarding are both single-directional communication NAT functions).



1-to-1 NAT is usually used when you have a group of internal servers with private IP addresses that must connect to the external network. You can use 1-to-1 NAT to map the internal servers to public IP addresses. The IP address of the internal device will not change. 1-to-1 NAT will also create a corresponding secondary IP address (10.10.10.1) if the device is in the same subnet as the incoming interface.

The figure below illustrates how a user could extend production lines and use the same private IP addresses of internal devices in each production line. The internal private IP addresses of these devices will map to different public IP addresses. Configuring a group of devices for 1-to-1 NAT is easy and straightforward.



#### 1-to-1 NAT Setting in Production Line 1

	Status	Description	Index	Mode	Protocol	Incoming Interface	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)
• /	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_1-1	1	1-to-1		WAN	Any Any	10.10.1.1.Any	All	Any Any	192.168.100.1:Any
- /	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_1-2	2	1-to-1		WAN	Any:Any	10.10.1.2:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.100.2:Any

#### 1-to-1 NAT Setting in Production Line 2

	Status	Description	Index	Mode	Protocol	Incoming Interface	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)
• /	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_2-1	1	1-to-1		WAN	Any:Any	10.10.2.1.Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.100 1:Any
• •	Enabled	1-to-1_production_line_2-2	2	1-to-1		WAN	Any:Any	10.10.2.2:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.100.2:Any

# 1-to-1 NAT

Status * Enable  Description  O/ 128  Priority *  1 1-128  Mode 1-10-1  Nat Loopback Double NAT Disabled  Total  Disabled  Corpinal Packet (Condition)  Endemain IP *  0.0.0  Destination IP *  0.0.0	Create Index 1			
Description          Priority*         1         1-128         Mode         1-1-1         NT Loopback         Disabled         Disabled         VRP Binding         Disabled         Disabled         Coriginal Packet (Condition)         Icoming Interface         LAN         Destination IP*         0.0.0	Status *			
Priority*   1   1-128   Mode   1-to-1   NAT Loopback   Disabled   VRPP Binding   Disabled     VRRP Binding   Disabled     Original Packet (Condition)   Incoming Interface   LAN   Destination IP*   0.0.0	Enabled	*		
Priority*   1   1-128   Mode   1-to-1   NAT Loopback   Disabled   VRPP Binding   Disabled     VRPP Binding   Disabled     Original Packet (Condition)   Incoming Interface   LAN   Destination IP*   0.0.0				
Priority*   1   1-128   Mode   1-to-1   NAT Loopback   Disabled   VRPP Binding   Disabled     VRPP Binding   Disabled     Original Packet (Condition)   Incoming Interface   LAN   Destination IP*   0.0.0				
Priority* 1 1-128 Mode 1-to-1  NAT Loopback Double NAT Disabled  VRRP Binding Disabled  VRRP Binding Disabled  Coriginal Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface LAN  Destination IP* 0.0.0  Destination IP* 0.0.0.	Description			
1   1-128   Mode   1-to-1   NAT Loopback   Disabled   Tisabled   Disabled     VRRP Binding   Disabled     Original Packet (Condition)   Incoming Interface   LAN   Destination IP*   0.0.0			0 / 128	
1-128   Mode   1-to-1   Disabled   Disabled   VRPP Binding   Disabled   Disabled     Original Packet (Condition)   Incoming Interface   LAN   Destination IP*   0.0.0      Destination IP* 0.0.0	Priority *			
Mode   1-to-1     NaT Loopback   Disabled   Disabled     VRRP Binding   Disabled     Original Packet (Condition)   Incoming Interface   LAN   LAN      Destination IP* 0.0.0    Destination IP* 0.0.0	1			
1-to-1   NAT Loopback   Disabled   Disabled     VRRP Binding   Disabled     VRRP Binding   Disabled     Original Packet (Condition)   Incoming Interface   LAN   LAN      Destination IP* 0.0.0    Destination IP* 0.0.0	1 - 128			
NAT Loopback   Disabled   VRP Binding   Disabled      Original Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface   LAN   LAN   Destination IP*   0.0.0   Estimation IP*   0.0.0	Mode			
Disabled  VRRP Binding Disabled  VRRP Binding Disabled  Coriginal Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface LAN  Destination IP* 0.0.0.  Destination IP* 0.0.0.	1-to-1	-		
Disabled  VRRP Binding Disabled  Coriginal Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface LAN  Destination IP* 0.0.0.0  Destination IP* 0.0.0.0				
VRRP Binding Disabled	NAT Loopback	Double NAT		
Disabled  Criginal Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface LAN  Destination IP* 0.0.0  Destination IP* 0.0.0	Disabled	<ul> <li>Disabled</li> </ul>	~	
Disabled  Criginal Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface LAN  Destination IP* 0.0.0  Destination IP* 0.0.0				
Original Packet (Condition) Incoming Interface LAN • Destination IP * 0.0.0 <b>Translated Packet (Action)</b> Destination IP * 0.0.0	VRRP Binding			
LAN  Destination IP * 0.0.0.0  Translated Packet (Action)  Destination IP * 0.0.0.0	Disabled	Ŧ		
Incoming Interface LAN  Destination IP * 0.0.0  Translated Packet (Action)  Destination IP * 0.0.0				
LAN  Destination IP * 0.0.0.0  Translated Packet (Action)  Destination IP * 0.0.0.0		(a. 11)		
LAN  Destination IP * 0.0.0  Translated Packet (Action)  Destination IP * 0.0.0		Condition)		
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0 Translated Packet (Action) Destination IP * 0.0.0.0				
0.0.00 Translated Packet (Action) Destination IP * 0.0.00	LAN	*		
0.0.00 Translated Packet (Action) Destination IP* 0.0.00				
Translated Packet (Action) Destination IP * 0.0.0				
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0			
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0				
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0				
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0	Translated	Packet (Acti	on)	
0.0.0.0		`	,	
CANCEL APPLY	0.0.0.0			
CANCEL APPLY				
CANCEL APPLY				

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 128	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1

NAT Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1-to-1 N-to-1	Select 1-to-1 as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to:	
PAT Advance	<u>N-to-1</u> <u>PAT</u> Advance	1-to-1

## NAT Loopback

Enable or disable the NAT Loopback function. Refer to NAT	
Enabled or Disabled Enable or disable the NAT Loopback function. Refer to <u>NAT</u> Loopback for more information.	
Description	Factory Default
Enable or disable the Double NAT function. Refer to <u>Double</u> <u>NAT</u> for more information.	Disabled
	Description Enable or disable the Double NAT function. Refer to <u>Double</u>

#### VRRP Binding

Setting	Description	Factory Default
VRRP Index No	Select which VRRP settings the 1-to-1 NAT rule should use.	Disabled

**<sup>/</sup>** 

## NOTE

VRRP Binding is only supported in 1-to-1 NAT. If a VRRP index is selected, the 1-to-1 NAT rule is only valid when the system is the master. If no VRRP index is selected, the1-to-1 NAT rule will be valid regardless of if the system is the master or backup.

## **Original Packet (Condition)**

Incoming Interface					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
All					
LAN	Select the incoming interface for the NAT rule.	LAN			
WAN					

#### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Set the public IP address which the internal IP will be	0.0.0.0
IF AUULESS	translated into.	0.0.0.0

## Translated Packet (Action)

#### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the internal IP address on the LAN.	0.0.0.0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **NAT Loopback**

NAT Loopback is designed to facilitate communication with service servers which have external IP translation within the same LAN segment. Consider the following scenario:



- 1. Host tries to access the web server via <u>www.xyz.com</u>.
- 2. The DNS server returns the Web Server IP: 10.10.10.20.
- 3. Host will start to send the request packets to 10.10.10.20.

#### With NAT Loopback disabled:

- Because the request packet comes from Host, the incoming interface does not match any NAT rule.
- The EDR-G9010 will receive the request packet because the NAT rule has created a secondary IP: 10.10.10.20.
- The EDR-G9010 sends the response packet to Host itself.
- Host will access the EDR-G9010's web page via <u>www.xyz.com</u>.

#### With NAT Loopback enabled:

- The EDR-G9010 will forward the request packet from Host to the Web Server with Destination (from 10.10.10.20 to 192.168.127.20) and Source (from 192.168.127.10 to 10.10.10.20) IP translation.
- The Web Server sends the response packet to the EDR-G9010. The EDR-G9010 then forwards it to Host with Destination (from 10.10.10.20 to 192.168.127.10) and Source (from 192.168.127.20 to 10.10.10.20) IP translation.
- Host will correctly access the Web Server via <u>www.xyz.com</u>.

Status Description	Index	Mode	Protocol Incoming Interface		Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)
Enabled	1	1-to-1	LAN	Any:Any	10.10.10.20:Any	All	Any:Any	192.168.127.20:Any

# **Bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT**



For some applications, devices need to talk to both internal and external devices without using a gateway. Bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT can do Network Address Translation in both directions without needing a gateway.

## **Double NAT**

The traditional bidirectional 1-to-1 NAT concept uses two 1-to-1 rules to facilitate two-way communication, as in the example below. With Double NAT, only 1-to-1 rule is necessary. The EDR-G9010 will automatically translate the incoming and outgoing addresses as if it was handling two separate rules, one for inbound and one for outbound. The main advantage of Double NAT is that it reduces the number of NAT rules and necessary IP addresses.

#### Example



## •

#### NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router can obtain an IP address via DHCP or PPPoE. However, if this dynamic IP address is the same as the WAN IP for 1-to-1 NAT, then the 1-to-1 NAT function will not work. For this reason, we recommend disabling the DHCP/PPPoE function when using the 1-to-1 NAT.

# N-to-1 NAT

If the user wants to hide the internal IP address from users outside the LAN, the easiest way is to use the N-to-1 (or N-1) NAT function. N-1 NAT replaces the source IP address with an outgoing interface IP address and adds a logical port number to identify the connection of this internal/external IP address. This function is also called "Network Address Port Translation" (NAPT) or "IP Masquerading".

Create Index 1		
Status *		
Enabled	•	
Description	2	
	0/128	
Priority *		
1		
1 - 128		
Mode		
N-to-1	*	
Original Packet (		
Source IP: Start *	Source IP: End *	
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	
<b>-</b> ii	Packet (Action)	
Translated		
Translated		
Outgoing Interface		

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 128	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1
NAT Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1-to-1 N-to-1 PAT Advance	Select N-to-1 as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to: <u>1-to-1</u> <u>PAT</u> <u>Advance</u>	1-to-1

#### **Original Packet (Condition)**

Source IP: Start		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the starting IP address of the source IP range.	0.0.0.0

Source IP: End		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the ending IP address of the source IP range.	0.0.0.0

## Translated Packet (Action)

Outgoing Interface			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
All			
LAN	Select the outgoing interface for the NAT rule.	LAN	
WAN			

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **PAT (Port Address Translation)**

If the initial connection is from outside the LAN, but the user still wants to hide the internal IP address, one way to do this is to use the PAT NAT function.

The user can specify the port number of an external IP address (WAN1 or WAN2) in the Port Forwarding policy list. For example, if the IP address of a web server in the internal network is 192.168.127.10 with port 80, the user can set up a Port Forwarding policy to let remote users connect to the internal web server from external IP address 10.10.10.10 through port 8080. The Industrial Secure Router will transfer the packet to IP address 192.168.127.10 through port 80.

The PAT NAT function is one way of connecting from an external non-secure area (WAN) to an internal secure area (LAN). The user can initiate the connection from the external network to the internal network, but not the other way around.


	. (	0/128					
	104	D / 128					
	20	J / 128					
		0/128					
	8	0 / 128					
		•					
ible NAT							
abled							
t (Aci	tion)						
				_			
				CANCEL	APPLY		
Index Mode	Protocol	Incoming Interface	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packe
	t (Act	t (Action)	• t (Action)	t (Action)	t (Action)	t (Action)	t (Action)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 128	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1

NAT Mode			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
1-to-1 N-to-1 PAT Advance	Select PAT as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to: <u>1-to-1</u> <u>N-to-1</u> Advance	1-to-1	

#### Protocol

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
ICMP				
ТСР	Select the NAT policy protocol.	None		
UDP				

#### NAT Loopback

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT Loopback function. Refer to <u>NAT</u> Loopback for more information.	Disabled

#### Double NAT

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Fnabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Double NAT function. Refer to <u>Double</u> <u>NAT</u> for more information.	Disabled

## **Original Packet (Condition)**

## Incoming Interface

2				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
All				
LAN	Select the interface for the NAT policy.	LAN		
WAN				

#### **Destination Port**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the destination port number.	0

## Translated Packet (Action)

#### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the translated IP address on the internal network.	0.0.0
Destination Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default

Setting D	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535 S	Specify the translated port number on the internal network.	0

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# Advance

The Advance NAT function opens up all available options to advanced users to customize their own settings.

Status *			
Enabled	*		
Description			
			0 / 128
Priority * 1			
1 - 128			
Mode			
Advance			
	- 3		
Protocol			-
Original Packet (Co	ndition)	)	
Incoming Interface	<u>.</u>		
Source IP Mapping Type			
Any	×		
Source Port Mapping Type Any	*		
Destination IP Mapping Type			
Single	×		
Destination IP * 0.0.0.0	6		
0.0.0.0			
Destination Port Mapping Ty	pe		
an a	×		
Any	1		
Any			
Any		+ / A ation	n)
1 - C - 1 - 2	acke	et (Actio	
Translated F	acke	et (Actio	
Translated F	acke	et (Actio	.,
Translated F	)acke	et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any	acke	et (Actio	
Translated F	Packe	et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type	Packe	et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type	Packe	et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type	Packe	et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type Any		et (Actio	,
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Destination IP Mapping Type		et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type Any		et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type Any Destination IP Mapping Type		et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type Any Destination IP Mapping Type Single		et (Actio	
Translated F Outpoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type Any Destination IP Mapping Type Single		et (Actio	
Translated F Outgoing Interface Any Source IP Mapping Type Any Source Port Mapping Type Any Destination IP Mapping Type Single	•	et (Actio	

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the NAT policy.	Enabled
Description		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Description	Enter a name for the NAT rule.	None
Priority		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 128	Specify the index of the NAT rule.	1
NAT Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1-to-1 N-to-1 PAT Advance	Select Advance as the NAT type. For other NAT modes, refer to: <u>1-to-1</u> <u>N-to-1</u> PAT	1-to-1

#### Protocol

Setting	Description	Factory Default
ICMP		
ТСР	Select the NAT policy protocol.	None
UDP		

# **Original Packet (Condition)**

#### Incoming Interface

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All		
LAN	Select the interface for the NAT policy.	LAN
WAN		

#### Source IP Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single		
Range	Select the source IP mapping type.	Any
Subnet mask		
Dynamic		

#### Source Port Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Select the source port mapping type.	Any
Range		

Destination IP Mapping Type		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single		Any
Range	Select the destination IP mapping type.	
Subnet mask		

#### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the translated IP address on the internal network.	0.0.0

#### Destination Port Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Select the destination port mapping type.	Single
Range		

# **Translated Packet (Action)**

#### **Outgoing Interface**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All		
LAN	Select the interface for the NAT policy.	Any
WAN		

#### Source IP Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Any			
Single			
Range	Select the source IP mapping type.	Any	
Subnet mask			
Dynamic			

#### Source Port Mapping Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Select the source port mapping type.	Any
Range		

# Destination IP Mapping Type Setting Description

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Coloct the destination ID manning type	Single
Range	Select the destination IP mapping type.	Single
Subnet mask		

#### Destination IP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the translated IP address on the internal network.	0.0.0.0

#### **Destination Port Mapping Type**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any		
Single	Select the destination port mapping type.	Single
Range		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Overview**

The EDR-G9010 Industrial Secure Routers support object-based firewall management to help protect your network on a granular level. From the Object Management screen, you can create, modify, and edit the objects you need based on your security requirements. These objects are used in firewall policies that can be configured on the Firewall function page.

In addition, objects allow for more efficient firewall rule management. A single object can be assigned to multiple rules and changes to the object will apply to all associated rules, saving users time having to update individual policies one by one.

Object N	Management			
•			<b>Q</b> Search	
	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
Max. 512			Items per page: 50 💌	0 of 0   < < > >

## NOTE

The EDR-G9010 supports a maximum of 512 objects.

# **Create a New Object**

The EDR-G9010 Series supports several types of objects, depending on the security requirements for your network.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **D** icon to create a new object.

Create Object		
Name *		
0 / 32		
Object Type *		
	CANCEL	CREATE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 32 characters	Enter a name for the object.	None

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select the type of object.	
IP Address and Subnet,	Refer to the following sections for more information about	
	each object type:	
Industrial Application	Create an IP Address and Subnet Object	None
Service,	Create a Network Service Object	
User-Defined Service	Create an Industrial Application Service Object	
	Create a User-defined Service Object	

# **Create an IP Address and Subnet Object**

IP address/subnet-based objects allow traffic filtering for a single IP, an IP range, or a subnet.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **I** icon to create a new object and select **IP Address and Subnet** as the Object Type.

Create Object				
Name *				
Object-01				
	9/32			
Object Type				
IP Address and Su	ıbnet	-		
IP Туре *	*			
			CANCEL	CREATE

#### IP Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Single IP, IP Range, Subnet	Select the IP type. Refer to the following sections for more information about each option.	None

## Single IP

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type *			
IP Address and Subnet	-		
ID Torres			
IP Type Single IP			
IP Address *			
		CANCEL	CREATE

IP Address			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
IP address	Enter a valid IP address.	None	

## IP Range

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9/32			
Object Type *			
IP Address and Subnet	*		
ID Turns			
IP Range			
IP Address: Start *	IP Address: End *		
<u>.</u>			
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### IP Address: Start

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the starting IP address of the IP range.	None

#### IP Address: End

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the ending IP address of the IP range.	None

#### Subnet

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9/32			
Object Type *			
IP Address and Subnet			
IP Type			
Subnet -			
Subnet *	Subnet Mask *		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Subnet

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP address	Specify the subnet IP address.	None
Subnet Mask		
Subnet Mask Setting	Description	Factory Default

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{CREATE}}$  to create the object.

# **Create a Network Service Object**

Service-based objects allow for traffic filtering based on specific network services.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **I** icon to create a new object and select **Network Service** as the Object Type.

Create Object				
Name *				
Object-01				
9/32				
Object Type Network Service	•			
Select Network Service				
> C Remote-Access				
> 🗌 Remote-Desktop				
> 🗌 Email				
File-Transfer				
> Web-Access				
>  Network-Service				
>      Authentication				
> VOIP-and-Streaming				
SQL-Server				
		CAN	EL	CREATE

#### Select Network Service

Select the network service(s) you want to enable. Refer to the table below for more details about each service.

Service Name	Protocol (Port Number)
	WINS (TPC 1512; UDP 1512)
Remote-Access	TELNET (TCP 23)
	SSH (TCP 22)
	PC-Anywhere (TCP 5631; UDP 5632)
	Chrome-Remote-Desktop (UDP 5222)
	AnyDesk (TCP 6568, 7070; UDP 50001 - 50003)
Remote-Desktop	Teamviewer (TCP 5938)
-	RDP (TCP 3389)
	VNC (TCP 5900)
	X-WINDOW (TCP 6000 - 6063)
	IMAP (TCP 143)
	IMAPS (TCP 993)
	POP3 (TCP 110)
Email	POP3S (TCP 995)
	SMTP (TCP 25)
	SMTPS (TCP 465)
	FTP (TCP 21)
	FTPS (TCP 990)
	SFTP (TCP 115; UDP 115)
	TFTP (UDP 69)
File-Transfer	NFS (TCP 111, 2049; UDP 111, 2049)
	SAMBA (TCP 139)
	AFS3 (TCP 7000 – 7009; UDP 7000 - 7009)
	SMB (TCP 445)
	HTTP (TCP 80)
Web-Access	HTTPS (TCP 443)
	BGP (TCP 179)
	DHCP (UDP 67)
	DHCP6 (UDP 546)
	DNS (TCP 53; UDP 53)
	NTP (TCP 123; UDP 123)
Network-Service	ICMP-PING (ICMP Type Any Code Any)
	OSPF (IP Protocol 89)
	RIP (TCP 520)
	SNMP (TCP 161 – 162; UDP 161 - 162)
	SYSLOG (UDP 514)
	LDAP (TCP 389; UDP 389)
	LDAPS (TCP 636; UDP 636)
Authentication	RADIUS (UDP 1812 – 1813)
	TACACS+ (TCP 49; UDP 49)
	SIP (TCP 5060; UDP 5060)
VOIP-and-Streaming	RSTP (TCP 554, 7070, 8554; UDP 554)
	MS-SQL (TCP 1433 - 1434)
SQL-Server	MYSQL (TCP 3306)

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the object.

# **Create an Industrial Application Service Object**

Industrial application service-based objects allow for traffic filtering based on specific industrial application protocols.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **D** icon to create a new object and select **Industrial Application Service** as the Object Type.

Create Object
Name * Object-01
9 / 32 Object Type Industrial Application Service
Select Industrial Application Service
Modbus (TCP 502; UDP 502)
DNP3 (TCP 20000)
EC-60870-5-104 (TCP 2404)
EC-61850-MMS (TCP 102)
OPC-DA (TCP 135)
OPC-UA (TCP 4840; UDP 4840)
CIP-EtherNet/IP (TCP 44818; UDP 2222)
Siemens-Step7 (TCP 102)
Moxa-RealCOM (TCP 950 - 981)
Moxa-MXview-Request (TCP 161, 162, 443, 4000; UDP 4000, 40404)
CANCEL CREATE

#### Select Industrial Application Service

Select the industrial application service(s) you want to enable. Refer to the table below for more details about each service.

Service Name	Port Number
Modbus	TCP 502; UDP 502
DNP3	TCP 20000
IEC-60870-5-104	TCP 2404
IEC-61850-MMS	TCP 102
OPC-DA	TCP 135
OPC-UA	TCP 4840; UDP 4840
CIP-EtherNet/IP	TCP 44818; UDP 2222
Siemens-Step7	TCP 102
Moxa-RealCOM	TCP 950 – 981
Moxa-MXview-Request	TCP 161, 162, 443, 4000; UDP 4000, 40404

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the object.

# **Create a User-defined Service Object**

User-defined service-based objects allow for traffic filtering based on user-defined communication protocols.

On the **Object Management** page, click the **D** icon to create a new object and select **User-defined Service** as the Object Type.

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9/32			
Object Type			
User-defined Service	Υ.		
IP Protocol *	*		
		CANCEL	CREATE

IP Protocol				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
TCP, UDP,				
TCP and UDP,	Select a protocol. Refer to the following sections for more	News		
ICMP,	information about each option.	None		
Custom IP Protocol				

## TCP, UDP, TCP and UDP

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9/32			
Object Type *			
User-defined Service	*		
IP Protocol			
TCP	•		
Service Port Type * 👻			
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Service Port Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any,		
Single TCP and UDP		
Port,	Select a port type for the protocol.	None
TCP and UDP Port		
Range		

If you selected **Single TCP and UDP Port** as the port type, you also need to specify a port number. The port number range is between 1 to 65535.

Create Object		
Name *		
0/32		
Object Type *		
User-defined Service -		
ID Destand 4		
IP Protocol * TCP ~		
TCF +		
Service Port Type		
Single TCP and UDP		
Port *		
1 - 65535		
	CANCEL	CREATE

If you selected **TCP and UDP Port Range** as the port type, you also need to specify the starting and ending port number. The port number range is between 1 to 65535.

Create Object				
Name *				
0/32				
Object Type *				
User-defined Service	•			
IP Protocol *				
ТСР	•			
Service Port Type TCP and UDP Port R 🔻				
Port: Start *	Port: End *			
1 - 65535	1 - 65535			
		c	ANCEL	CREATE

## ICMP

Create Object			
Name =			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type *			
User-defined Service	*		
IP Protocol *			
ICMP			
ICMP Type (Decimal)			
Leave blank to represent any	0-255		
ICMP Code (Decimal)			
Leave blank to represent any	0-255		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### ICMP Type (Decimal)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Blank, 0 to 255	Specify the ICMP type value.	None

#### ICMP Code (Decimal)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Blank, 0 to 255	Specify the ICMP code value.	None

# **Custom IP protocol**

Create Object			
Name *			
Object-01			
9 / 32			
Object Type *			
User-defined Service	•		
IP Protocol			
Custom IP Protocol	*		
IP Protocol (Decimal) *			
0 - 255			
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### IP Protocol (Decimal)

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 255	Specify the IP protocol value.	None

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the object.

# **Modify an Existing Object**

In the object list, click the **Edit** () icon next to entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Object Management**

÷		Qs	earch	
	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
• 🖸	Dbject-01	User-defined Service	TCP	0
	Dbject-02	Network Service	Remote-Access	0
Max. 512			Items per page: 50 👻 1 - 2 of 2	I< < > >I

# **Delete an Object**

Select the item(s) in the object list, click the **Delete** ( $\mathbf{I}$ ) icon. When prompted to confirm, click **DELETE** to delete the object(s).

Object N	lanagement			
ī		<b>Q</b> \$	Search	
	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
Image: A start and a start	Object-01	User-defined Service	ТСР	0
	Object-02	Network Service	Remote-Access	0
Max. 512			liems per page: 50 ▼ 1 − 2 of 2	I< < > >I

# Search for an Object

Enter a search term in the Search field. Any object matching the search criteria will be shown in the object list.

# **Object Management**

Ð			Search net	
	Name	Туре	Detail	Ref. Count
□ ∕	Object-02	Network Service	Remote-Access	0
Max. 512			Items per page: 50 💌 1 – 1 of 1	$ \langle \langle \rangle \rangle $

From the Firewall section you can configure the Layer 2 Policy, Layer 3 – 7 Policy, Malformed Packets, Session Control, DoS Policy, and Advanced Protection settings.



# **Policy Concept**

A firewall device is commonly used to provide secure traffic control over an Ethernet network, as illustrated in the following figure. Firewall devices are deployed at critical points between an external network (nonsecure) and an internal network (secure).



# **Layer 2 Policy**

The EDR-G9010 supports advanced Layer 2 firewall policies for secure traffic control. Layer 2 firewall policies can filter packets from bridge ports and have a higher priority than L3 policies.

Ð	1Ξ				Q	Search						
		Enable	Index	Incoming Bridge Port	Outgoing Bridge Port	Ether Type	Source MAC	Destina	ation MA(	c	Ac	tior
	1	Enabled	1	Any BRG Members	Any BRG Members	Any	Any	Any			Ac	cep
Max.2	256					Items p	oerpage: 10 💌	1 – 1 of 1	<	<	>	>

# **Create a New Layer 2 Policy**

Click the 🖿 icon to create a new Layer 2 Policy.

Add Layer 2 Poli	су				
Enable *					
Enabled	٣				
Index *					
2					
1-2					
Incoming Bridge Port *		Outgoing Bridge Port *			
Any BRG Members	•	Any BRG Members	*		
EtherType Options *					
Any	•				
Action *					
Accept	٣				
Source MAC Type *					
Any	*				
Destination MAC Type *					
Any	•				
					1) <b>-</b>
				CANCEL	CREATE

Enable		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Layer 2 policy.	Enabled
Index		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 256	The index number is generated automatically.	1
Incoming/Outgoing	Bridge Port	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any BRG Members	Select the Incoming and Outgoing bridge port.	Any BRG Members
EtherType Options		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any, Manual	Select the Layer 2 protocol for this policy. If set to "Manual", you can specify the EtherType. Refer to EtherType for Layer 2 Protocol for a list of all types.	Any
Action		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Accept	The Firewall will accept the packet if it matches the policy.	

Accept The Firewall will accept the packet if it matches the policy. Accept	Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Accept	The Firewall will accept the packet if it matches the policy.	Accont
Drop The Firewall will drop the packet if it matches the policy.	Drop	The Firewall will drop the packet if it matches the policy.	Αιτερι

#### Source MAC Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any	The Firewall will check all source MAC addresses of the packet.	Any
Single	The Firewall will only check the specified source MAC address of the packet.	00:00:00:00:00:00

#### Destination MAC Type

Destination		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any	The Firewall will check all destination MAC addresses of the packet.	Any
Single	The Firewall will only check the specified destination MAC address of the packet.	00:00:00:00:00:00

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

#### Modify an Existing Layer 2 Policy

Click the 🖍 icon of the entry you want to modify. When finished, click APPLY to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Layer 2 Policy**

Select the item(s) in the Layer 2 policy list, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click DELETE to delete the item(s).

#### Search for a Existing Layer 2 Policy

Enter the words you want to search in the **Search** field. Anything matching the search criteria will be shown in the Layer 2 Policy list.

#### **Reorder Layer 2 Policies**

If necessary, the priority of Layer 2 policies can be changed by reordering policies. the priority of Layer 2 policy.

- 1. Click the  $\ddagger$  icon.
- 2. Move the cursor to the policy you want to reorder. The cursor will change to  $^{\textcircled{}}$ .
- 3. Click and drag the policy into the desired position and release.
- 4. When finished reordering the policies, click the  $\textcircled{ extsf{ extsf extsf{ extsf} extsl} extsf{ extsf{ extsf} ex$

				<b>Q</b> Search					
	Enable	Index	Incoming Bridge Port	Outgoing Bridge Port	Ether Type	Source MAC	Destination	n MAC	Action
≡	Diffioled	1	Any BRG Members	Any BRG Members	Any	Any	Any		Drop
≡	Enabled	2	Any BRG Members	Any BRG Members	Any	Any	Any		Accept
Max. 25	5				Ite	ms per page: 10 💌	1 - 2 of 2	< <	> >
APPLY									

## EtherType for Layer 2 Protocol

The following table shows the Layer 2 protocol types commonly used in Ethernet frames.

Туре	Layer 2 Protocol
0x0800	IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4)
0x0805	X25
0x0806	ARP (Address Resolution Protocol)
0x0808	Frame Relay ARP
0x08FF	G8BPQ AX.25 Ethernet Packet
0x6000	DEC Assigned proto
0x6001	DEC DNA Dump/Load
0x6002	DEC DNA Remote Console
0x6003	DEC DNA Routing
0x6004	DEC LAT
0x6005	DEC Diagnostics
0x6006	DEC Customer use
0x6007	DEC Systems Comms Arch
0x6558	Trans Ether Bridging
0x6559	Raw Frame Relay
0x80F3	Appletalk AARP
0x809B	Appletalk
0x8100	8021Q VLAN tagged frame
0x8137	Novell IPX
0x8191	NetBEUI
0x86DD	IP version 6 (Internet Protocol version 6)
0x880B	РРР
0x884C	MultiProtocol over ATM
0x8863	PPPoE discovery messages
0x8864	PPPoE session messages
0x8884	Frame-based ATM Transport over Ethernet
0x9000	Loopback

# Layer 3 - 7 Policy

The Industrial Secure Router's Firewall policy provides secure traffic control, allowing users to control network traffic.

Policy Global Setting								
Enforcement Default Action								
Disabled - Deny All	*							
Policy Event Global Setting								
Enabled 🔹								
Enabled 🔹								
APPLY		Q Search						
		<b>Q</b> Search						
APPLY	Event	Search Incoming Interface	Outgoing Interface	Filter Mo	de	Se	ource Add	Ires
APPLY	Event	Incoming	Outgoing Interface	Filter Mo	de	So	ource Add	Ires
APPLY	Event	Incoming	Interface	Filter Mo			ource Add	•

## **Policy Global Setting**

The Policy Global Setting section lets users enable and configure the default action if the traffic doesn't match any of the configured rules on the router.

Enforcement		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the global Policy Enforcement feature.	Disabled
Default Action		
	Description	Factory Default
<b>Default Action</b> Setting Allow All	Description Allow all network traffic that does not match any rule.	Factory Default

## **Policy Event Global Setting**

Log					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable global policy event logs.	Disabled			

# Create a New Layer 3 - 7 Policy

Click 🖿 to create a new Layer 3 – 7 policy.

	0/128			
4> Warning	-	Local Storage	*	
utgoing Interface *				
ny	*			
9/9/94				
× 🗗				
- <b>E</b>				
÷ +				
	everity * 4> Warning utgoing Interface * 	4> Warning  utgoing Interface * my	everity * Log Destination 4> Warning • Local Storage utgoing Interface * my • • • • •	everity * Log Destination 4> Warning • Local Storage • utgoing Interface * my • • • • • • • •

#### Index

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 1024	The index number is generated automatically.	1
Enforcement		
Enforcement Setting	Description	Factory Default

Name					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Custom string (0 to 32 characters)	Enter a name for the firewall rule.	None			

#### Description

		Factory Default
Custom string (0 to 128 characters)	Enter the description for the firewall rule.	None

#### Log

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the firewall event logging.	Disabled

# SeveritySettingDescriptionFactory Default<0> Emergency<1> Alert<2> Critical<3> Error<4> Warning<5> Notice<6> Informational<7> Debug

Log Destination			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Local Storage	The firewall event logs are stored on the local storage and will		
Local Storage	show in the <u>Event Log</u> table.	Local Storage	
Syslog	The firewall event logs are sent to a Syslog server.		
Trap	The firewall event logs are sent to a SNMP Trap.		

#### Incoming Interface

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any, WAN, LAN	Select the incoming interface.	Any

#### **Outgoing Interface**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any, WAN, LAN	Select the outgoing interface.	Any

#### Action

ACTION		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Allow	Allow network traffic that matches this rule.	Allow
Deny	Block network traffic that matches this rule.	Allow

#### Filter Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP and Port Filtering	The firewall policy will filter based on IP address and port.	
IP and Source MAC	The firewall policy will filter based on IP address and check the average MAC address in the packet	ID and Port Filtoring
Binding	source MAC address in the packet.	IF and Fort Filtering
Source MAC Filtering	The firewall policy will filter based on source MAC address.	

#### Source MAC Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
MAC Address	If the Filter Mode is set to "IP and Source MAC Binding" or "Source MAC Filtering", specify the source MAC address. The firewall policy will check the source MAC address in the packet.	None

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the firewall policy check any source IP	
Any	addresses in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the $lacksquare$	Any
	icon to Create an IP Address and Subnet Object.	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the firewall policy check any source port	
Any	numbers in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the 🖪	Any
	icon to Create a User-defined Service Object.	

# Destination IP Address Setting Description Factory Default Any Select Any to have the firewall policy check any destination IP addresses in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the icon Create an IP Address and Subnet Object. Any Destination Port Description Factory Default Setting Description Factory Default Select Any to have the firewall policy check any destination port numbers in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the Factory Default

Any for the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the icon to <u>Create an IP Address and Subnet Object</u>. Refer to <u>Destination Port for Layer 3 – 7 Protocol</u> for a list of all destination ports.

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.



# NOTE

The Industrial Secure Router's firewall function will check if incoming or outgoing packets match the firewall policy. It starts by checking the packet with the first policy (Index=1); if the packet matches this policy, it will accept the packet immediately and then check the next packet. If the packet does not match this policy it will check against the next policy.



# NOTE

The maximum number of Firewall policies for the EDR-G9010 is 1024.

## Modify an Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### Delete an Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Select the item(s) in the Layer 3 – 7 policy list, click the  $\blacksquare$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

#### Search for an Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy

Enter the words you want to search in the **Search** field. Any matching the search criteria will be shown in the Layer 3 - 7 policy list table.

#### **Reorder Existing Layer 3 – 7 Policy**

If necessary, the priority of Layer 3 – 7 policies can be modified by reordering rules. Refer to the instructions in the <u>Reorder Layer 2 Policies</u> section.

## **Destination Port for Layer 3 – 7 Protocol**

Network Service	Industrial Application Service
Remote-Access	Modbus
Remote-Desktop	DNP3
Email	IEC-60870-5-104
File-Transfer	IEC-61850-MMS
Web-Access	OPC-DA
Network-Service	OPC-UA
Authentication	CIP-EtherNet/IP
VOIP-and-Streaming	Siemens-Step7
SQL-Server	Moxa-RealCOM
Authentication	moxa-MXview-Request

# **Malformed Packets**

tatus =			
Disabled	•		
Severity *			
Emergency		Log Destination	

## **Enable Malformed Packets**

The Malformed Packets function enables the device to record event logs with a user-specified severity whenever malformed packets are dropped by the system.

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the system to record event logs when malformed packets are dropped.	Disabled

Severity			
Severity	Description	Factory Default	
Emergency	System is unusable		
Alert	Action must be taken immediately		
Critical	Critical conditions		
Error	Error conditions	Emergency	
Warning	Warning conditions	Lineigency	
Notice	Normal but significant condition		
Info	Informational messages		
Debug	Debug-level messages		

Log Destination		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage	The malformed packets event logs are stored in the local	
Local Storage	storage and will show in the Event Log table.	Nama
Syslog	The malformed packets event logs are sent to a Syslog server.	None
Trap	The malformed packets event logs are sent by SNMP Trap.	

# **Session Control**

EDR-G9010 supports session control to help users protect backend hosts or services and avoid system abnormalities.

# 

# NOTE

If a TCP connection is successfully established, but no data is sent, the connection will be released after 8 seconds. If the interval between the last data transmission on the connection exceeds 300 seconds, the connection will also be released.

Session Network Host		rol ce Resource Prote	ctor					
0 13	1					Q Search		
	Index	Enforcement	Name	Destination IP	Destination Port	Total TCP Connection	Concurrent TCP Request	Action
Max. 64							0a(0   C	ः ः अ
APPLY								

## **Create a New Session Control Policy**

Click 
Click 
Control policy.

Create Sessio	on Contr	ol Policy	
Index * 1			
1 - 1024			
Enforcement *			
Enabled	*		
Name *			
2	0/32		
Severity *		Log Destination	
<4> Warning	•	Local Storage	•
-		G <del>.</del>	
Action *			
Drop	*		

#### Index

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 1024	The index number is generated automatically.	1
Enforcement	, ,	

Enforcement		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the control policy rule.	Enabled
Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 32 characters	Enter a name for this policy.	None

Severity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
<0> Emergency		
<1> Alert		
<2> Critical		
<3> Error	Coloct the coverity of the costion control event	
<4> Warning	Select the severity of the session control event.	<4> Warning
<5> Notice		
<6> Informational		
<7> Debug		

#### Log Destination

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage	The session control event logs will be stored in the local	
Local Storage	storage and will show in the <u>Event Log</u> table.	Local Storage
Syslog	The session control event logs will be sent to a Syslog server.	Local Storage
Trap	The session control event logs will be sent by SNMP Trap.	

## Action

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Monitor	Monitor the network traffic that matches this rule.	Drop
Drop	Drop the network traffic that matches this rule.	ыор

#### **TCP Destination**

# NOTE

IP Address and Port cannot both be Any.

IP Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the session control policy check any IP	
Any	addresses in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the $lacksquare$	None
	icon to Create an IP Address and Subnet Object.	
Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select Any to have the session control policy check any port	
Any	numbers in the packet or pre-defined objects, or click the $lacksquare$	None

icon to Create a User-defined Service Object.

#### **TCP Connection Limitation**

TCP Connec	ction Limitation	n* 📵	
Total TCP C	onnection	Concurren	nt TCP Request
1 - 65535	connections	1 - 512	connections/s

NOTE

At least one limitation is required.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the total allowed number of TCP connections.	None
Concurrent TCP	Request	
<i>Concurrent TCP</i> Setting	Request	Factory Default

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

# NOTE

The maximum number of session control policies is 64.

## Modify an Existing Session Control Policy

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Delete an Existing Session Control Policy**

Select the item(s) in the Session Control policy list, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

#### Search for an Existing Session Control Policy

Enter the search term in the **Search** field. Anything matching the search criteria will be shown in the Session Control policy list table.

#### **Reorder Session Control Policies**

If necessary, the priority of Session Control policies can be modified by reordering rules. Refer to the instructions in the <u>Reorder Layer 2 Policies</u> section.

# **DoS (Denial of Service) Policy**

The Industrial Secure Router provides 9 different DoS functions for detecting or defining abnormal packet formats or traffic flows. The Industrial Secure Router will drop packets when it either detects an abnormal packet format or identifies unusual traffic conditions.

oS Settings		
] All		
] Null Scan	ICMP-Death	
] Xmas Scan	Limit 1000	
] NMAP-Xmas Scan	1 - 4000 pkt/s	
] SYN/FIN Scan	SYN-Flood	
] FIN Scan	Limit 1000	
] NMAP-ID Scan	1 - 4000 pkt/s	
] SYN/RST Scan	ARP-Flood	
NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan	Limit 1000	
J NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan	1-2000 pkt/s	
oS Log Settings		
g* Severity* isabled <del>v</del> <0> Eme	<ul> <li>Log Destination</li> </ul>	

## **DoS Settings**

All		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable the DoS policy for all types.	Unchecked
Null Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable Null Scan.	Unchecked
Xmas Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable Xmas Scan.	Unchecked
NMAP-Xmas Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable NMAP-Xmas Scan.	Unchecked
SYN/FIN Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable SYN/FIN Scan.	Unchecked
FIN Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable FIN Scan.	Unchecked

NMAP-ID Scan		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable NMAP-ID Scan.	Unchecked
SYN/RST Scan		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable SYN/RST Scan.	Unchecked

#### NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan.	Unchecked

#### ICMP-Death

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable the ICMP-Death protection.	Unchecked
Limit (1 to 4000	If enabled, specify the limit that will trigger ICMP-Death	1000
Packets/Second)	protection.	1000

#### SYN-Flood

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Checked or Unchecked	Enable or disable SYN-Flood protection.	Unchecked
Limit (1 to 4000 Packets/Second)	If enabled, specify the limit that will trigger SYN-Flood protection.	1000

#### ARP-Flood

Description	Factory Default
Enable or disable ARP-Flood protection	Unchecked
If enabled, specify the limit that will trigger ARP-Flood protection.	1000
	Enable or disable ARP-Flood protection If enabled, specify the limit that will trigger ARP-Flood

## **DoS Log Settings**

Log		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable DoS event logs.	Disabled

#### Severitv

ouroney		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
<0> Emergency		
<1> Alert		
<2> Critical		
<3> Error	Calast the severity of DeC events	
<4> Warning	Select the severity of DoS events.	<0> Emergency
<5> Notice		
<6> Informational		
<7> Debug		

#### Log Destination

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage	The DoS event logs are stored in the local storage and will	
Local Storage	show in the <u>Event Log</u> table.	Disabled
Syslog	The DoS event logs are sent to a Syslog server.	Disabled
Trap	The DoS event logs are sent by SNMP Trap.	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Advanced Protection**

The Industrial Secure Router supports industrial protocol filtering, allowing users to inspect network traffic based on specific protocols to detect anomalies and protect your network.



# NOTE

The application firewall requires a security package to be installed. Refer to <u>Software Package Management</u> for more information and instructions.

From the **Advanced Protection** section, the following functions can be configured: **Dashboard**, **Configuration**, **Protocol Filter Policy**, **ADP**, and **IPS**.



# Dashboard

The application firewall's dashboard provides an overview with package information and real-time event counters. Click **Refresh** to renew the information on the dashboard.

ashboard					
Information					
Package Version 5.0.0016	Package Update 2022-07-07 0				
Enforcement Disabled			PS Disabled	IPS Operation Mode Prevention Mode	
Engine Version					
IPS		1	2.0.0004		<u>^</u>
Modbus/TCP		3	22.3.0014		
DNP3		3	22.3.0014		
4					
Intrusion Prevention	System (IPS) →				ADP →
Intrusion Prevention	0	0	0	0	adp → O
Intrusion Prevention	System (IPS) →	<b>O</b> Medium	<b>O</b> Low	<b>O</b> Inform	ADP → O Hit
0	0	0 Medium	<b>O</b> Low	O	0
<b>O</b> Critical	0	Medium	O Low	0 Inform	0
O Critical Enforcement →	<b>O</b> High			0 Inform	0
Critical Enforcement → Modbus/TCP	O High DNP3	MMS	IEC-104	0 Inform	0

#### Information

This section shows the version of the firewall engines and the security package currently installed on the Industrial Secure Router.

#### Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)

This section shows the current number of intrusion prevention system (IPS) events.

#### **ADP (Anomaly Detection & Protection)**

This section shows the current number of anomaly detection & prevention (ADP) events.

#### Enforcement

This section shows the current number of Modbus/TCP, DNP3, MMS, and IEC-104 industrial protocol events.

Click the  $\rightarrow$  icon in each section to see all event logs or click any of the cards to view event logs for that specific type.

# Configuration

From the Configuration section, you can modify settings for the application firewall including global settings, protocol filtering objects and profiles, and firewall policy settings.

## **Global Settings**

#### Backup/Restore

#### Configuration

On the Global Settings tab, select **Configuration** in the **Backup/Restore** section.

Click BACK UP to export the Industrial Secure Router's configuration settings as a file to the local host.

To restore the device's configuration using a backup file, click the  $\Box$  icon and navigate to the configuration backup file on the local host and click **RESTORE**.

Global Settings	Protocol Filter Objects	Protocol Filter Profile
ackup/Restore		
Configuration	O Protocol Filter Policy	O Debug Information
Select File		<b>F</b> 1

#### **Protocol Filter Policy**

On the Global Settings tab, select Protocol Filter Policy in the Backup/Restore section.

Click **BACK UP** to export the Industrial Secure Router's protocol filter policy settings as a file to the local host.

To restore the device's policy settings using a backup file, click the  $\Box$  icon and navigate to the policy backup file on the local host and click **RESTORE**.

Global Settings	Protocol Filter Objects	Protocol Filter Profile
ckup/Restore		
Configuration	Protocol Filter Policy	O Debug Information
elect File		<b>F</b> 1

## **Debug Information**

On the Global Settings tab, select **Debug Information** in the **Backup/Restore** section.

Click **BACK UP** to export the Industrial Secure Router's debug information as a file to the local host.

onfiguration	ı	
Global Settings	Protocol Filter Objects	Protocol Filter Profile
Configuration	O Protocol Filter Policy	Debug Information
BACK UP		

# **Global Settings**

Intrusion Preventio	ii Oy	IPS Operation Mode *		
Disabled	*	Prevention Mode	*	
Enforcement				
Enforcement		Action *		
Enabled	•	Reset	*	
Modbus/TCP Firewall *		Modbus/TCP ADP *		Modbus/TCP Service Port *
Enabled	×	Enabled		502,
				1 - 65535
DNP3 Firewall *		DNP3 ADP *		DNP3 Service Port *
Enabled	٠	Enabled	×	20000,
				1 - 65535
IEC-104 Firewall *		IEC-104 ADP *		IEC-104 Service Port *
Enabled	×	Enabled	×	2404,
				1 - 65535
MMS Firewall *				MMS Service Port *
Enabled	*			102,
				1 - 65535
Teaching have a teach				
Troubleshooting				
Debug Logging *				
Disabled				

## Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)

#### IPS

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enables or Disabled	Enable or disable intrusion prevention system (IPS)	Disabled
LINADIES OF DISADIEU	functionality.	Disabled

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Prevention Mode, Detection Mode	Select the IPS operation mode.	Prevention Mode
Enforcement		
Enforcement		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the default global rule.	Disabled
Action		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Accept, Monitor, Reset	Select the default action of the protocol filter.	Reset
Modbus/TCP Firewal	I	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Modbus/TCP protocol filter engine.	Enabled
Modbus/TCP ADP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Modbus/TCP protocol filter engine and	Enabled
	corresponding ADP function.	
Modbus/TCP Service	Port	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	If Modbus/TCP Firewall is enabled, specify the service port for Modbus/TCP traffic.	502
DNP3 Firewall		1
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the DNP3 protocol filter engine.	Enabled
DNP3 ADP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the DNP3 protocol filter engine and	Enabled
	corresponding ADP function.	Ellabled
DNP3 Service Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	If DNP3 Firewall is enabled, specify the service port for DNP3 traffic.	20000
IEC-104 Firewall		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the IEC-104 protocol filter engine.	Enabled
IEC-104 ADP		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the IEC-104 protocol filter engine and corresponding ADP function.	Enabled
IEC-104 Service Port		1
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	If IEC-104 Firewall is enabled, specify the service port for IEC-	
1 to 65535	104 traffic.	102
MMS Firewall		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the MMS protocol filter engine.	Enabled
MMS Service Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	If MMS Firewall is enabled, specify the service port for MMS	2404
1 to 65535	If MMS Firewall is enabled, specify the service port for MMS traffic.	2404

#### Troubleshooting

#### Debug Logging

Setting Description		Factory Default	
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable debug logging. If enabled, the system will create debug logs for troubleshooting.	Disabled	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Protocol Filter Objects**

The application firewall's protocol filter uses objects to configure firewall policies. Objects simplify rule composition and maintenance.

Configuratio	n					
Global Settings	Protocol Filter Objects	Protocol Filter Profile				
Ð		Q Search				
Protoc	col Filter Object	Category	Protocol Filter Profile			
Max. 64				C of 0	<	>

## **Create a New Protocol Filter Object**

On the **Protocol Filter Objects** tab, click the **D** icon to create a new filter object. The configuration

settings depend on the selected Category.

Refer to the following sections for more details on each category: <u>Create a Modbus/TCP Object</u> <u>Create a DNP3 Object</u> <u>Create an IEC-104 Object</u> <u>Create a MMS Object</u>

Create Object	rt		
Name *			
	0/64		
Category *	•		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Modify an Existing Protocol Filter Object

Select the item in the Protocol Filter Object Table and click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Protocol Filter Object**

Select the item(s) in the Protocol Filter Object Table. Click the  $\blacksquare$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the protocol filter object(s).
## Create a Modbus/TCP Object

Create Object		
Name *		
0/64		
Category		
Modbus/TCP -		
Slave ID Any		
Any 0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF		
Protocol Filter Profile * 🕶		
	CANCEL	CREATE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter object.	None

#### Category

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Modbus/TCP	Select the Modbus/TCP protocol.	None

#### Slave ID

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 255, 0x00 to 0xFF)	Description Specify the slave ID. Leave this field blank to represent any ID.	Any

The Slave ID is used to identify Modbus devices. This ID can be used to communicate via devices such as bridges and gateways which use a single IP address to support multiple independent end units.

#### Protocol Filter Profile

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select a preset or user-configured protocol filter profile for this	
Read Only, Write Only,	protocol filter object. Refer to <u>Protocol Filter Profile</u> for more	Nama
Read/Write, Manual	information about user-configured profiles.	None
	Select Manual to manually configure the profile parameters.	

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## **Create a DNP3 Object**

Create Obj	ect		
Name *			
	0/64		
Category			
DNP3	<u> </u>		
Protocol Filter	Profile * 🔻		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter object.	None

## Category

Setting	Description	Factory Default
DNP3	Select the DNP3 protocol.	None

#### **Protocol Filter Profile**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Manual	Select a preset or user-configured protocol filter profile for this	
	protocol filter object. Refer to <u>Protocol Filter Profile</u> for more	None
	information about user-configured profiles.	None
	Select Manual to manually configure the profile parameters.	

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{CREATE}}$  to save your configuration.

## Create an IEC-104 Object

Create Obje	ct		
Name *			
	0 / 64		
Category			
IEC-104	*		
Protocol Filter	Profile * 🔻		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter object.	None
Category		
<i>Category</i> Setting	Description	Factory Default

## Protocol Filter Profile

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select a preset or user-configured protocol filter profile for this	
Manual	protocol filter object. Refer to Protocol Filter Profile for more	None
Mallual	information about user-configured profiles.	None
	Select Manual to manually configure the profile parameters.	

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## **Create a MMS Object**

Create Obje	ect		
Name *			
	0 / 64		
Category			
MMS	*		
Protocol Filter	Profile * 💌		
			~
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter object.	None

#### Category

Category				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
MMS	Select the MMS protocol.	None		

#### **Protocol Filter Profile**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Identity Service, Read Service, Write Service, Report Service	Select a preset or user-configured protocol filter profile for this protocol filter object. Refer to <u>Protocol Filter Profile</u> for more information about user-configured profiles. Select Manual to manually configure the profile parameters.	
Journal Service, Manual	Select Manual to manually configure the profile parameters.	

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## **Protocol Filter Profile**

Protocol filter profiles provide a way to quickly group protocol-related settings. Protocol filter profiles can then be used in protocol filter objects.

Global Settings	Protocol Filter Objects	Protocol Filter Profile		
0		Q Search		

#### **Create a New Protocol Filter Profile**

On the **Protocol Filter Profile** tab, click the **I** icon to create a new filter profile. The configuration settings depend on the selected Category.

Refer to the following sections for more details on each category: <u>Create a Modbus/TCP Profile</u> <u>Create a DNP3 Profile</u> <u>Create an IEC-104 profile</u> <u>Create a MMS Profile</u>

Create Profil	e		
Name *			
	0 / 64		
Category *			
		CANCEL	CREATE

## Modify an Existing Protocol Filter Profile

Select the item in the Protocol Filter Profile Table and click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click the **APPLY** button to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Protocol Filter Profile**

Select the item(s) in the Protocol Filter Profile Table. Click the  $\mathbf{\hat{I}}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the protocol filter profile(s).

## Create a Modbus/TCP Profile

Modbus/TCP is a Modbus protocol used for communications over TCP/IP networks, connecting over port 502 by default. Modbus has also been experimentally used over UDP on IP networks, which removes the overheads required for TCP. The following table shows the Modbus TCP frame format:

Modbus/TCP Frame Format				
Description	Length	Function		
Transaction Identifier	2 bytes	Synchronization between messages of the server and client		
Protocol Identifier	2 bytes	The value is 0 for Modbus TCP protocol		
Length Field	2 bytes	Number of remaining following bytes in this frame		
Unit Identifier	1 byte	Slave Address (255 is used for device broadcast information)		
Function code	1 byte	Defines the message type		
Data bytes	n bytes	Data block with additional information		

Create Profile			
Name *			
	0/64		
Category			
Modbus/TCP	<u> </u>		
Function Code *	*		
		CANCEL	CREATE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter profile.	None

Category

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Modbus/TCP	Select the Modbus/TCP protocol.	None

Function Code		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select the function code or manually specify the function code.	
All, blank, common	The function code format is 0 to 255 and allows commas.	Nene
function code	Refer to the Common Function Codes table for a full list of	None
	function codes.	

#### Common Function Codes:

			Function Name	Function Code
		Physical Discrete Inputs	Read Discrete Inputs	2
	Bit Access	Internal Bits or Physical Coils	Read Coils	1
			Write Single Coil	5
			Write Multiple Coils	15
		Physical Input Registers	Read Input Register	4
			Read Holding Registers	3
			Write Single Register	6
Data Access			Write Multiple	16
	16-bit Access	Internal Registers or	Registers	10
		Physical Output Registers	Read/Write Multiple	23
			Registers	25
			Mask Write Register	22
			Read FIFO Queue	24
	File Record Access		Read File Record	20
	The Record Acc		Write File Record	21
			Read Exception Status	7
			Diagnostic	8
			Get Com Event	11
Diagnostics			Counter	11
Diagnostics			Get Com Event Log	12
			Report Slave ID	17
			Read Device	43
			Identification	-5

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## **Create a DNP3 Profile**

Distributed Network Protocol 3 (DNP3) is a set of communications protocols used between components in process automation systems, connecting over port 20000 by default. Its main use is in utilities such as electric and water companies. The following table shows the DNP3 frame format:

DNP3 Frame Format		
Description	Length	Function
Application Header	4 bytes	Includes application control, function code and internal
Application neadel	4 Dytes	indications information.
Object Header	4 bytes	Includes object type field, qualifier field, and range field
Object Reduer	4 Dytes	information.
		Encoded representation of data from a point, or other
DNP3 Objects	n bytes	structure, that is formatted according to its group and variation
		number for transport in a message.

Create Profile		
Name *		
0/64		
Category DNP3 ~		
Source Address		
0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF		
Destination Address		
0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF		
Application Function Code		
0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF		
Group		
0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF		
Variation		
0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF		
	CANCEL	CREATE

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter profile.	None
Category		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
DNP3	Select the DNP3 protocol.	None
Source Address		·
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 65535, 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	Specify the source address, which will be checked in the DNP3 packet.	None
Destination Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 65535, 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	Specify the destination address, which will be checked in the DNP3 packet.	None
Application Function	Code	
Sotting	Description	Eactory Default

# SettingDescriptionFactory Default0 to 255, 0x00 to 0xFFSpecify the function code.None

The application function code indicates the purpose, or requested operation, of the message. While DNP3 allows multiple data types in a single message, it only allows a single requested operation on the data types within the message. The following table shows the reading, writing, and other operations.

	Function Name	Function Code
	Confirm	0
	Read	1
	Write	2
	Select	3
	Operate	4
	Dir operate	5
	Dir operate – No resp	6
	Freeze	7
	Freeze – No resp	8
	Freeze clear	9
	Freeze clear – No resp	10
	Freeze at time	11
	Freeze at time – No resp	12
	Cold restart	13
	Warm restart	14
	Initialize data	15
Doquesto	Initialize application	16
Requests	Start application	17
	Stop application	18
	Save configuration	19
	Enable unsolicited	20
	Disable unsolicited	21
	Assign class	22
	Delay measurement	23
	Record current time	24
	Open file	25
	Close file	26
	Delete file	27
	Get file information	28
	Authenticate file	29
	Abort file	30
	Activate config	31
	Authenticate request	32
	Authenticate request – No ack	33
	Response	129
Responses	Unsolicited response	130
	Authentication resp	131

#### Group

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 255, 0x00 to 0xFF	Specify the group. This classifies the type or types within a	N/A
	message.	IN/A

#### Variation

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the variation. This represents a choice of encoding	N/A
	formats for many of the data types.	

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## **Create an IEC-104 Profile**

The IEC 60870-5-104 (IEC-104) protocol is an extension of the IEC-101 protocol with changes in transport, network, link, and physical layer services to suit complete network access, connecting over port 2404 by default. The protocol can be used to provide TCP/IP communication between a Controlling Station and Controlled Station (Outstation). The following table shows the IEC-104 Application Service Data Unit (ASDU) frame format:

IEC-104 ASDU Frame Format			
Description	Length	Function	
Type Identification	1 byte	Number that identifies the ASDU followed by its format and its content.	
Variable Structure Qualifier	1 byte	Describes how the information objects are organized.	
Cause of Transmission	1-2 bytes	Includes the reason for sending the ASDU and one byte with an identifier of the control center.	
Common Address	1-2 bytes	The application address used to identify the data in the system.	
Information Object	n bytes	Includes the content of the requested service or the notified information.	

CANCEL	CREATE
	CANCEL

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter profile.	None
Category		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IEC-104	Select the IEC-104 protocol.	None

#### Cause of Transmission

Setting Description		Factory Default	
1	Specify the number that identifies the reason for sending the	N	
'	ASDU. Refer to the table below for an overview of all causes and corresponding description.	None	
	and corresponding description.		

Cause	Description
1	periodic, cyclic
2	background interrogation
3	spontaneous
4	initialized
5	interrogation or interrogated
6	activation
7	confirmation activation
8	deactivation
9	confirmation deactivation
10	termination activation
11	feedback, caused by distant command
12	feedback, caused by local command
13	data transmission
14-19	reserved for further compatible definitions
20	interrogated by general interrogation
21	interrogated by interrogation group 1
22	interrogated by interrogation group 2
23	interrogated by interrogation group 3
24	interrogated by interrogation group 4
25	interrogated by interrogation group 5
26	interrogated by interrogation group 6
27	interrogated by interrogation group 7
28	interrogated by interrogation group 8
29	interrogated by interrogation group 9
30	interrogated by interrogation group 10
31	interrogated by interrogation group 11
32	interrogated by interrogation group 12
33	interrogated by interrogation group 13
34	interrogated by interrogation group 14
35	interrogated by interrogation group 15
36	interrogated by interrogation group 16
37	interrogated by counter general interrogation
38	interrogated by interrogation counter group 1
39	interrogated by interrogation counter group 2
40	interrogated by interrogation counter group 3
41	interrogated by interrogation counter group 4
44	type-Identification unknown
45	cause unknown
46	ASDU address unknown
47	Information object address unknown

#### Type Identification

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 127 or 0x00 to 0x7F	Specify the number that identifies the ASDU, its format, and its content. Refer to the table below for an overview of all types and corresponding description.	None

	Туре	Description		
	1	Single point information		
	2	Single point information with time tag		
	3	Double point information		
	4	Double point information with time tag		
	5	Step position information		
	6	Step position information with time tag		
	7	Bit string of 32 bit		
	8	Bit string of 32 bit with time tag		
	9	Measured value, normalized value		
	10	Measured value, normalized value with time tag		
Process information in	11	Measured value, scaled value		
monitor direction	12	Measured value, scaled value with time tag		
	13	Measured value, short floating-point value		
	14	Measured value, short floating-point value with time tag		
	15	Integrated totals		
	16	Integrated totals with time tag		
	17	Event of protection equipment with time tag		
	18	Packed start events of protection equipment with time tag		
		Packed output circuit information of protection equipment with time		
	19	tag		
	20	Packed single-point information with status change detection		
	21	Measured value, normalized value without quality descriptor		
	30	Single point information with time tag CP56Time2a		
	31	Double point information with time tag CP56Time2a		
	32	Step position information with time tag CP56Time2a		
	33	Bit string of 32 bit with time tag CP56Time2a		
	34	Measured value, normalized value with time tag CP56Time2a		
Process telegrams with long	35	Measured value, scaled value with time tag CP56Time2a		
time tag (7 octets)	36	Measured value, short floating-point value with time tag CP56Time2a		
	37	Integrated totals with time tag CP56Time2a		
	38	Event of protection equipment with time tag CP56Time2a		
	39	Packed start events of protection equipment with time tag CP56time2a		
		Packed output circuit information of protection equipment with time		
	40	tag CP56Time2a		
	45	Single command		
	46	Double command		
	47	Regulating step command		
Process information in control direction	48	Setpoint command, normalized value		
	49	Setpoint command, scaled value		
	50	Setpoint command, short floating-point value		
	51	Bit string 32 bit		
	58	Single command with time tag CP56Time2a		
	59	Double command with time tag CP56Time2a		
	60	Regulating step command with time tag CP56Time2a		
Command telegrams with	61	Setpoint command, normalized value with time tag CP56Time2a		
long time tag (7 octets)	62	Setpoint command, scaled value with time tag CP56Time2a		
	63	Setpoint command, short floating-point value with time tag CP56Time2a		
	64	Bit string 32 bit with time tag CP56Time2a		
System information in	-			
monitor direction	70	End of initialization		

	Туре	Description
	100	(General-) Interrogation command
	101	Counter interrogation command
	102	Read command
Custom information in	103	Clock synchronization command
System information in control direction	104	(IEC 101) Test command
	105	Reset process command
	106	(IEC 101) Delay acquisition command
	107	Test command with time tag CP56Time2a
	100	(General-) Interrogation command
	110	Parameter of measured value, normalized value
Parameter in control	111	Parameter of measured value, scaled value
direction	112	Parameter of measured value, short floating-point value
	113	Parameter activation
	120	File ready
	121	Section ready
	122	Call directory, select file, call file, call section
File transfer	123	Last section, last segment
	124	Ack file, Ack section
	125	Segment
	126	Directory
	127	QueryLog – Request archive file

#### Original Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 255, 0x00 to 0xFF	Specify the address that identifies the control center.	None

Common Address				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
0 to 65535, 0x0000 to	Specify the common address of the ASDU.	None		
0×FFFF	specify the common address of the ASDO.	None		

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## **Create a MMS Profile**

MMS (Manufacturing Message Specification) is a messaging system for modeling real devices and functions and for exchanging information about the real device and process data in real-time, and supervisory control information between networked devices and/or computer applications. MMS connects over port 102 by default.

MMS communicates using a client-server model. A client is a network application or device (e.g., monitoring system, control center) that asks for data or an action from the server. A server is a device or application that contains a Virtual Manufacturing Device (VMD) and its objects (e.g., variables) that the MMS client can access. The VMD object represents a container in which all other objects are located. The client issues MMS service requests and the server responds to these requests.

Create Profile	e		
Name *			
	0/64		
Category *			
MMS	•		
Common Type *		*	
Service *	*		
Service Operatio	on* 👻		
			CANCEL

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the protocol filter profile.	None
Category		

Setting	Description	Factory Default
MMS	Select the MMS protocol.	None

#### Command Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Command type code	Select the type of MMS PDU. Refer to the table below for an overview of all command types.	None

	Command Type		Command Type
1	confirmed_RequestPDU	8	cancel_ErrorPDU
2	confirmed_ResponsePDU	9	initiate_RequestPDU
3	confirmed_ErrorPDU	10	initiate_ResponsePDU
4	unconfirmed_PDU	11	initiate_ErrorPDU
5	rejectPDU	12	conclude_RequestPDU
6	cancel_RequestPDU	13	conclude_ResponsePDU
7	cancel_ResponsePDU	14	conclude_ErrorPDU

Service			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Any, Confirmed			
Request, Confirmed	Select the service.	None	
Response, Unconfirmed			

Service	Operation
---------	-----------

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Service operation code	Select the MMS service operation. Refer to the table below for	Nono
	an overview of all service operations.	None

	Service Operation		Service Operation
1	acknowledgeEventNotification	42	getProgramInvocationAttributes
2	alterEventConditionMonitoring	43	getScatteredAccessAttributes
3	alterEventEnrollment	44	getVariableAccessAttributes
4	createJournal	45	identify
5	createProgramInvocation	46	informationReport
6	defineEventAction	47	initializeJournal
7	defineEventCondition	48	initiateDownloadSequence
8	defineEventEnrollment	49	initiateUploadSequence
9	defineNamedType	50	input
10	defineNamedVariable	51	kill
11	defineNamedVariableList	52	loadDomainContent
12	defineScatteredAccess	53	obtainFile
13	defineSemaphore	54	output
14	deleteDomain	55	read
15	deleteEventAction	56	readJournal
16	deleteEventCondition	57	relinquishControl
17	deleteEventEnrollment	58	rename
18	deleteJournal	59	reportActionStatus
19	deleteNamedType	60	reportEventActionStatus
20	deleteNamedVariableList	61	reportEventConditionStatus
21	deleteProgramInvocation	62	reportEventEnrollmentStatus
22	deleteSemaphore	63	reportJournalStatus
23.	deleteVariableAccess	64	reportPoolSemaphoreStatus
24	downloadSegment	65	reportSemaphoreEntryStatus
25	eventNotification	66	reportSemaphoreStatus
26	fileClose	67	requestDomainDownLoad
27	fileDelete	68	requestDomainUpload
28	fileDirectory	69	reset
29	fileOpen	70	resume
30	fileRead	71	start
31	fileRename	72	status
32	getAlarmEnrollmentSummary	73	stop
33	getAlarmSummary	74	storeDomainContent
34	getCapabilityList	75	takeControl
35	getDomainAttributes	76	terminateDownloadSequence
36	getEventActionAttributes	77	terminateUploadSequence
37	getEventConditionAttributes	78	triggerEvent
38	getEventEnrollmentAttributes	79	unsolicitedStatus
39	getNamedTypeAttributes	80	uploadSegment
40	getNamedVariableListAttributes	81	write
41	getNameList	82	writeJournal

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

# **Protocol Filter Policy**

The application firewall policies provide inspection of industrial protocol packets, which allows users to control protocol traffic based on the configured policy and Anomaly Detection & Protection (ADP) settings. Refer to the <u>Add a New Protocol Filter Policy</u> and <u>ADP (Anomaly Detection & Protection)</u> sections.

÷									Q Search			
	Index	Policy Name	Status	Protocol Filter Object	From interface	To interface	Source IP	Destination IP	Protocol	Command Type	Application Protocol	Action

## Add a New Protocol Filter Policy

Click the 
conto create a new protocol filter policy.

Add Policy				
Index *				
1 - 256				
Policy Name *				
	0/64			
Status *	•			
		Telletesfeeret		
From Interface *	٠	To Interface *		
Source IP *				
Any	•			
Destination IP *				
Any	•			
Protocol *	¥			
Command Type *	*			
Application Protocol	* •			
istan Z				
Action *				
				CANCEL
				CANCEL

<i>Index</i> Setting	Description	En et a my Defendt	
<u> </u>	Description	Factory Default	
1 to 256	Specify the index of the policy.	None	
Name			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
0 to 64 characters	Enter a name for the policy.	None	
Status			
Setting	Description	<b>Factory Default</b>	
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the policy.	None	
From/To Interface Setting	Description	Factory Default	
<u> </u>	Select the From Interface and To Interface.	None	
Any, LAN, WAN	Select the From Interface and To Interface.	None	
Source IP			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Any	The policy will check all source IP addresses in the packet.		
Single	The policy will only check for the specified source IP address		
	in the packet.	Apy(	
Range	The policy will check all source IP addresses in the packet within the specified IP range.	Any	
	The policy will check for source IP addresses in the packet that	-	
Subnet	are within the specified subnet mask.		
		1	
Destination IP Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Any	The policy will check all destination IP addresses in the packet.		
	The policy will only check for the specified destination IP		
Single	address in the packet.		
Dance	The policy will check all destination IP addresses in the packet	Any	
Range	within the specified IP range.		
Subnet	The policy will check for destination IP addresses in the packet		
oubliet	that are within the specified subnet mask.		
Protocol			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Any, TCP, UDP	Select the protocol for this policy.	None	
Command Type			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Master Query, Slave			
Response	Select the packet transmission direction for this policy.	None	
Application Object			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Custom object	Select the application object for this policy.	None	
Action			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Accept	The packet will be allowed through the firewall when it matches this policy.	None	
	The packet will be allowed through the firewall when it		
Monitor	matches this policy, and an event log will be recorded.		
Monitor Reset	matches this policy, and an event log will be recorded. The packet will by dropped by the firewall when it matches		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Modify an Existing Policy**

Select the item in the Policy Table. Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **Delete an Existing Policy**

Select the item(s) in the Policy Table, click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and then click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **ADP (Anomaly Detection & Protection)**

## **Anomaly Detection & Protection**

		Q Search				
Index	Description	Category	Status	Action		
				0 of 0	1	

## Modify an Existing ADP Entry

Click the 🖍 icon to modify the Anomaly Detection & Protection (ADP) parameters.

inaex	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
ADP setting index	The number of the ADP setting.	1000000

#### Description

The following table provides a description for each ADP setting, listed by index.

#### **Anomaly Detection & Protection**

			<b>Q</b> Search			
	Index	Description		Category	Status	Action
1	1000000	Forbid multiple.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000001	Specific layer 4 field of modbus request OR response is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000002	Address of the data to be accessed is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000003	Quantity of the data is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000004	Data length indicated does not match the actual length.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000005	Value of data to be accessed is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000006	Function code or Unitidentifier in the response is not the same as request.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000007	Function code of request OR response is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000008	Specific field in Modbus MBAP header is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000009	Specific layer 7 field of modbus request OR response is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000010	Specific field in request is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000011	Specific field in response is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor
1	1000012	The emi type of request OR response is invalid.		Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor

#### Category

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Modbus/TCP, DNP3,	Select the protocol for the ADP settings.	Modbus/TCP
IEC-104	Select the protocol for the ADP settings.	Moubus/TCP

Status		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the selected ADP setting.	Enabled
Action		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Accept	The packet will be allowed through the firewall when it matches this ADP setting.	
Reset	The packet will by dropped by the firewall when it matches this ADP setting. The session will also be disconnected.	Monitor
Monitor	The packet will be allowed through the firewall when it matches this ADP setting and an event log will be recorded.	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **IPS (Intrusion Prevention System)**

To combat ever-changing cyberthreats, the EDR-G9010 Series supports intelligent IPS features that perform pattern-based detection and block known attacks.



## NOTE

A separate license is required to enable IPS functionality on the device.

## Intrusion Prevention System

<b>T</b> 2	۰,					c	Search	
			ID	Name	Status	Category	Severity	Action
		1	4026531840	TCP SYN Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
		1	4026531842	UDP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
		1	4026531844	ICMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
		1	4026531846	IGMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
		1	4026531847	IP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
		1	4026531849	UDP Port Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Monitor
		1	4026531851	TCP Port SYN Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Monitor
		1	4026531852	TCP Port FIN Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Monitor
	B	1	4026531853	TCP Port NULL Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Monitor
		1	4026531854	TCP Port Xmas Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Monitor
		1	1052003	EXPLOIT Veritas Backup Exec Agent CONNECT_CLIENT_AUTH Buffer Overflow -2 (CVE-2005-0773)	Enabled	Exploits	Critical	Reset
		1	1051723	VIRUS Elcar test string -1	Enabled	Malwaretraffic	Critical	Reset
		1	1051256	RPC Windows Lsasrv.dll RPC Overflow Unicode (Sasser)-1	Enabled	BufferOverflow	Critical	Reset
		1	1051255	RPC Windows Lsasrv.dll RPC Overflow (Sasser)-1	Enabled	BufferOverflow	Critical	Reset
		1	1051196	RPC Windows Lsasrv.dll RPC Overflow Unicode (Sasser)	Enabled	BufferOverflow	Critical	Reset
		1	1051158	WEB Microsoft IIS 5 SSL remote root exploit	Enabled	BufferOverflow	Critical	Reset
		1	1051092	EXPLOIT eSignal v7.6 remote buffer overflow	Enabled	Exploits	Critical	Reset
		1	1050964	EXPLOIT MDaemon buffer overflow	Enabled	Exploits	Critical	Reset
		1	1050874	EXPLOIT Microsoft ASN.1 Library Bitstring Heap Overflow (CVE-2003-0818)	Enabled	Exploits	Critical	Reset
		1	1050708	TELNET Jordan Telnet Server Buffer Overflow	Enabled	BufferOverflow	Critical	Reset

#### Refer to the table below for a description of each field.

Field	Description
ID	The pattern rule ID
Name	The pattern name of the intrusion
Status	The operational status of the pattern rule
Category	The threat category of the intrusion
Severity	The assigned security level for the intrusion
Action	The preset action when responding to the intrusion

## **Filter IPS Rules**

Use the filter function to quickly narrow down IPS pattern rules based on the set criteria.

Click the  $\overline{=}$  icon to expand the filter menu.

Status	•
Category	•
Severity	*
Action	*

Select the criteria for one or more fields and click **APPLY**. Any pattern rules matching the filter criteria will be shown in the table.

Click **CLEAR** to reset all filter criteria.

### **Quick Settings**

Quick Settings is used to easily configure multiple IPS rules at once. Users can choose to configure all IPS rules, based on filter criteria, or selected IPS rules.

Click the kicon and click **Quick Settings**.



#### **Modify Settings for All IPS Pattern Rules**

- 1. Select **All** under general.common.source.
- 2. Select the **Status** and **Action** in the Rule Settings section.
- 3. Click **APPLY** to save your changes. The changes will be applied to all IPS pattern rules.

Quick Sett	ings		
general.con	nmon.source		
	O Filter Rule	O User Selected	
Rule Setting	js		
Status *	*		
Action *	*		
		CANCEL	APPLY

#### **Modify Settings for Filtered Pattern Rules**

- 1. Select **Filter Rule** under general.common.source.
- 2. Select the filter criteria in the Filters section.
- 3. Select the **Status** and **Action** in the Rule Settings section.
- 4. Click **APPLY** to save your changes. The changes will be applied to all IPS pattern rules that match the filter criteria.

Quick Setting	js			
general.comm	on.source			
	• Filter Rule	O User Selecte	d	
Filters				
Status				
Category	<b>•</b>			
Severity	×			
Action	•			
Rule Settings				
Status *	•			
Action *	*			
		с	ANCEL	APPLY

#### Modify Settings for User-selected IPS Pattern Rules

- 1. In the IPS rules table, check the box of the IPS pattern rule(s) you want to modify.
- 2. Click the 丸 icon and click Quick Settings.



- 3. **User Selected** will selected by automatically.
- 4. Select the **Status** and **Action** in the Rule Settings section.
- 5. Click **APPLY** to save your changes. The changes will be applied to all selected IPS pattern rules.

Quick Setting	js		
general.comm		User Selected	
Rule Settings	0	0	
Status *	<b>•</b>		
Action *	•		
		CANCEL	APPLY

## **Detailed Information**

Click the **I** icon next to any rule to bring up a panel with detailed information about the IPS rule.

us	ion P	revention	System			IPS Rule Information
						TCP SYN Flood
Ŧ	¢₀			Q Search		Category Flooding&Scan
		ID	Name	Status	Category	Severity <b>High</b>
	• /	4026531840	TCP SYN Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Impact Denial of service
	•	4026531842	UDP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Reference MISC:RFC 793
		4026531844	ICMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Description
	•	4026531846	IGMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	SYN Flood works by sending several SYN packets with fake source IP addresses to the victim server. The
		4026531847	IP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	server then allocates memory for the pending TCP connection. The source address cannot be an active IP
	•	4026531849	UDP Port Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	address because if it were, that host would sent a RST (reset) message to
	•	4026531851	TCP Port SYN Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	the server, freeing the memory set aside by the initial SYN packet. The server then sends a SYN-ACK to the
	•	4026531852	TCP Port FIN Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	bogus IP address. The SYN-ACK message will time out and the server will send it again, keeping memory
	•	4026531853	TCP Port NULL Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	allocated to the connection for a longer period of time. If there are enough half-open TCP connections,
	•	4026531854	TCP Port Xmas Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	the server will run out of memory and cannot allow additional TCP connections. In some cases, the
	•	1052003	EXPLOIT Veritas Backup Exec Agent CONNECT_CLIENT_AUTH Buffer Overflow -2 (CVE-2005-0773)	Enabled	Exploits	server will crash because there is no free memory. Some servers implement a limit to the number of
	•	1051723	VIRUS Eicar test string -1	Enabled	Malwaretraffic	half-open connections thereby keeping the server from crashing.

Click the 🔳 icon again to close the panel.

## Modify an Existing IPS Rule Action

- 1. Click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the rule you want to modify.
- 2. Select the **Status** and **Action**.
- 3. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit IPS Rule	Action		
Name TCP SYN Flood			
Status * Enabled			
Action *			
Reset	•		
		CANCEL	APPLY

From the VPN section, you can configure IPSec, and L2TP Server settings.



# Overview

In this section we describe how to use the Industrial Secure Router to build a secure remote automation network with the VPN (Virtual Private Network) feature. A VPN provides a highly cost-effective solution for establishing secure communication tunnels so that data can be exchanged safely.





There are two common applications for secure remote communication in an industrial automation network:

#### **IPsec (Internet Protocol Security) VPN for LAN-to-LAN Security**

IPsec is often used for data communication between two different LAN segments that is limited to a predefined IP range.

IPsec uses the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) protocol for Authentication, Key exchange and provides a way for the VPN gateway data to be protected by different encryption methods.

There are 2 phases for IKE when negotiating the IPsec connections between 2 VPN gateways:

**Key Exchange (IPsec Phase 1):** The 2 VPN gateways will negotiate how IKE should be protected. Phase 1 will also authenticate the two VPN gateways by the matched Pre-Shared Key or X.509 Certificate.

**Data Exchange (IPsec Phase 2):** In Phase 2, the VPN gateways negotiate to determine additional IPsec connection details, which include the data encryption algorithm.

#### L2TP (Layer 2 Tunnel Protocol) VPN for Remote Roaming Users

L2TP is suitable for VPN environments with dynamic IPs for remote, roaming users. L2TP is a popular choice for VPN applications with remote roaming users because the protocol is already built into the Microsoft Windows operating system.

# **IPsec Configuration**

IPsec configuration consists of 5 parts:

- Global Setting: Enable or disable all IPsec tunnels and NAT-Traversal (NAT-T) functionality
- Tunnel Setting: Set up the VPN connection type and the VPN network plan
- Key Exchange: Authentication for 2 VPN gateways
- Data Exchange: Data encryption between VPN gateways
- Dead Peer Detection: The mechanism for VPN Tunnel maintenance

# **Global Settings**

Global Settings	IPSec Settings	IPSec Status
Status *		
Disabled	·	
IPSec NAT-T *		
Disabled	•	
VPN Event Log *		
Disabled	•	
Log Destination		

The Industrial Secure Router provides 3 Global Settings for IPsec VPN applications.

### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable all IPsec VPN services.	Disabled

## NOTE

IPsec VPN is disabled by default. Make sure to enable this option if you want to use the IPsec function.

IPsec NAT-T		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable IPsec NAT-T (NAT-Traversal). This option should be enabled if there an external Industrial Secure Router located between VPN tunnels.	Disabled
VPN Event Log		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable event log.	Disabled

Severity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Log severity	If VPN Event Log is enabled, select the severity for the VPN event logs.	None
Log Destination		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage, Syslog,	If VPN Event Log is enabled, select the VPN event log storage	Disabled
Trap	location.	

## **IPsec Settings**

Global Setting	js	IPSec Settings	IPSec Status			
8			Q	Search		
	Status	Name	Remote VPN Gateway	Local Network	Remote Network	

## **Create an IPsec Entry**

Click the conto create a new IPsec entry. IPsec supports two types of settings. Refer to the <u>IPsec Quick</u> <u>Settings</u> and <u>Advanced Settings</u> sections for more information.

## **IPsec Quick Settings**

The Industrial Secure Router's **Quick Settings** mode can be used to easily set up a site-to-site VPN tunnel between two Industrial Secure Router units.

Create IPSec	
Settings Quick Settings	Advanced Settings
Quien counigo	O Maraneea eetange

When choosing the Quick Settings mode, the user just needs to configure the following:

- Tunnel Settings
- Remote Network List

Click the 🖬 icon to configure the remote VPN network.

- > Remote Network: The IP address of the remote VPN network.
- > Netmask: The netmask of the remote VPN network.
- Security Settings
  - > Encryption Strength: Simple (AES-128), Standard (AES-192), or Strong (AES-256)
  - > Authentication Mode: Pre-shared Key, X.509, or X.509 With CA
  - > Pre-shared Key: The password of Pre-Shared Key

Tunnel Settings Status *					
Enabled	*	Name *			
	22	0 / 128			
VPN Connection *					
Site to Site	•	Remote VPN Gateway *			
Remote Network L	ist				
- +					
Required					
Max. 10			0 of 0	< <	> >
Security Settings					
O Simple	Os	andard 🧿 Strong			
Authentication Mode *					
Pre-shared Key	•	Pre-shared Key *			
		0/64			
				CANCEL	CREATE

## NOTE

The Encryption Strength, Authentication Mode, and Pre-Shared Key configuration should be identical for both Industrial Secure Router units.

## **IPsec Advanced Settings**

Select Advanced Settings to manually configure the full range of VPN settings.



## **Tunnel Settings**

Tunnel Settings Status *				
Enabled	•	Name *		
		0 / 128		
L2TP Tunnel *				
Disabled	•			
VPN Connection *			Startup Mode *	
Site to Site	-	Remote VPN Gateway *	Start in initial	-

## Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the VPN tunnel.	Enabled

Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 128 characters	Enter a name for this VPN tunnel.	None

# NOTE

The name cannot start with a number.

L2TP Tunnel			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable L2TP over IPsec.	Disabled	
VPN Connection			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Site to Site	The VPN tunnel for the Local and Remote subnets is fixed.		
Site to Site(Any)	The VPN tunnel for the Remote subnet area is dynamic and is	Site to Site	
Site to Site(Airy)	fixed for the Local subnet.		
Remote VPN Gatewa	<i>יy</i>		
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Setting IP Address	Description Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway.	Factory Default None	
		-	
IP Address Startup Mode		None	
IP Address Startup Mode Setting	Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway.	None	
IP Address Startup Mode	Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway. Description	None Factory Default	
IP Address Startup Mode Setting	Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway.         Description         The VPN tunnel will actively initiate the connection with the	-	

## •

## NOTE

The maximum number of **Starts** in the initial VPN tunnel is 30. The maximum number of **Waits** for connecting to a VPN tunnel is 100. This cannot be changed.

## Local Network List

Local Network List							
+ Local Network *     192.168.127.254	Netmask * 24 (255.255.255.0)	•					
Max. 10			1 – 1 of 1	<	<	>	>

## Local Network/Netmask

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address (max. 10 local VPN networks)	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the local VPN network. Users can configure multiple local networks to create an IPsec connection to the remote network. For example, if the user configures two local networks (192.168.127.254/24 and 192.168.126.254/24), these two networks will build an IPsec connection to the remote network.	192.168.127.254/ 24 (255.255.255.0)

## **Remote Network List**

Click the 🖿 icon to configure the remote VPN network.

Remote Network Li	st							
Remote Netwo	ork *	Netmask * 24 (255.255.255.0)	*					
Max. 10				1 - 1 of 1	<	<	>	>
Identity Type * IP Address	•	Local ID		Remote ID				
			0/31			0 /	31	

#### Remote Network/Netmask

Nemote Networky Netmask					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the remote VPN network. Users can configure multiple remote networks to				
IP address (max. 10 remote VPN network)	create an IPsec connection to the local network. For example, if the user configures two remote networks (10.10.100.254/24 and 10.10.110.254/24), these two	None/ 24 (255.255.255.0)			
	networks will build an IPsec connection to the local network.				

## Identity

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Туре	Select an ID type. There are four ID types: IP address, FQDN, Key ID, and Auto(with Cisco). Key ID is a user-defined string. Auto(with Cisco) is for used establishing connections to Cisco systems.	IP address
Local ID (max. 31 characters)	Specify the local ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Local ID must be identical to the Remote ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	None
Remote ID (max. 31 characters)	Specify the remote ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Remote ID must be identical to the Local ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	None

## Key Exchange (Phase 1)

Key Exchange (Phas IKE Mode *	se 1)	IKE Version *	
Main	•	IKE2	•
Authentication Mode *			
Pre-shared Key	-	Pre-shared Key *	
			0/64
Encryption Algorithm *		Hash Algorithm *	
AES-256	-	SHA-256	-

IKE Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Main	can be used for this VPN tunnel. Both VPN gateways must use the same algorithm to communicate.	
Aggressive	In "Aggressive" Mode, the Remote and Local VPN gateway will not negotiate the algorithm and will only use the user-defined configuration.	
IKE Version		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
IKE1	Use the IKE Version 1 protocol	IKE2
IKE2	Use the IKE Version 2 protocol	
Authentication Mode		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Pre-Shared Key	Pre-Shared Key is a user-defined authentication string used by two systems to establish an IPsec VPN connection.	Pre-Shared Key
X.509	In this mode, two systems authenticate the VPN connection using certificates imported in advance by the user on the Local <u>Certificate</u> page. Refer to User Scenario 1 and 2 in the <u>IPsec</u> <u>Use Case Demonstration</u> section for more details.	N/A
X.509 With CA	In this mode, two systems authenticate the VPN connection using certificates imported in advance by the user on the <u>Local</u> <u>Certificate</u> page and a CA certificate imported on the <u>Trusted</u> <u>CA Certificate</u> page. Refer to User Scenario 3, 4, and 5 in the <u>IPsec Use Case Demonstration</u> section for more details.	N/A

# NOTE

Certificates are a time-based form of authentication. Before processing certificates, please ensure that the industrial secure router is synced with the local device. For more information about syncing device time, please refer to the <u>Time</u> section.

Encryption Algorithm				
Setting	Description	Factory Default		
DES				
3DES				
AES-128	Select the encryption algorithm for Key Exchange.	AES-256		
AES-192				
AES-256				

#### Hash Algorithm

Setting	Description	Factory Default
MD5		
SHA-1	Select the encryption algorithm for Key Exchange.	SHA-256
SHA-256		

DH Group

Setting	Description	Factory Default
DH 1(modp768)		
DH 2(modp1024)	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the Key Exchange	D = 14(modn 2049)
DH 5(modp1536)	group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 14(modp2048)
DH 14(modp2048)		

#### IKE Lifetime

Setting	Description	Factory Default
30 to 43200 (minutes)	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for IKE SA.	43200 (minutes)

## Data Exchange (Phase 2)

Data Exchange (Phas Encryption Algorithm * AES-256	se 2)	Hash Algorithm * SHA-256	*
Perfect Forward Secrecy *		DH Group *	
Disabled	•	DH 14 (modp2048)	*
SA Life Time *			
43200			
30 - 43200	min.		

#### Encryption Algorithm

Setting	Description	Factory Default
DES		
3DES		
AES-128	Select the encryption algorithm for data exchange	AES-256
AES-192		
AES-256		

Hash Algorithm			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
MD5			
SHA-1	Select the Hash Algorithm for data exchange.	SHA-256	
SHA-256			

#### Perfect Forward Secrecy

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Perfect Forward Secrecy. When enabled, different security keys are used for different IPsec phases in order to enhance security.	Disabled

#### DH Group

Setting	Description	Factory Default
DH 1 (modp768)		
DH 2 (modp1024)	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the Key Exchange	$D = 14 (m \circ dm 2040)$
DH 5 (modp1536)	group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 14 (modp2048)
DH 14 (modp2048)		

#### SA Lifetime

Setting	Description	Factory Default
30 to 43200 (minutes)	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for Phase 2 IKE SA.	43200 (minutes)

### **Dead Peer Detection**

Dead Peer Detection is a mechanism to detect whether the connection between a local secure router and a remote IPsec tunnel has been lost.

Dead Peer Detection Action *				
Restart	*			
Retry Interval *		Confindence Interv	al *	
30		120		
0 - 3600	sec.	0 - 3600	sec.	

#### Action

The action the system will take when a dead peer is detected.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Hold	Maintain the VPN tunnel.	
Restart	Reconnect the VPN tunnel.	Restart
Clear	Clear the VPN tunnel.	Restalt
Disabled	Disable Dead Peer Detection.	

Retry Interval			
actory Default			
0 (seconds)			
0 (se			

Confidence Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
() to 3600 (seconds)	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the system will check if the connection is alive or not.	120 (seconds)

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

## Modify an Existing IPsec Entry

Select the item in the IPsec VPN List and click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Delete an Existing IPsec Entry**

Select the item(s) in the IPsec VPN List. Click the  $\mathbf{I}$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **IPsec Use Case Demonstration**

In the following section, we will consider five common user scenarios. The purpose of each example is to give a clearer understanding of two authentication modes 'X.509' and 'X.509 with CA'.



## NOTE

Certificates are a time-based form of authentication. Before processing certificates, please ensure that the industrial secure router is synced with the local device. For more information about syncing device time, please refer to the <u>Time</u> section.

## Scenario 1: X.509 Mode-One Certificate

Users will sometimes use certificates generated from a server or from the Internet. If users only get one certificate, they can import this certificate into a system. This system can then use the same certificate to identify other certificates and establish a VPN connection. In this case, users have to import certificates (.p12) into both systems. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install certificates and build an IPsec VPN connection.



## Scenario 2: X.509 Mode-Two Certificates

Users will sometimes use certificates generated from a server or from the Internet. If users get different certificates for different systems, users can import these certificates into the systems accordingly. However, systems require all of these certificates to identify trusted systems before establishing a IPsec VPN connection. Take the following two systems as an example: System A has certificate-1 (.p12) and System B has certificate-2 (.p12). To establish an IPsec VPN connection, System A and B have to exchange certificates (.crt) with each other. Next, Systems A and B need to install certificates (.crt). Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install certificates and build an IPsec VPN connection.



## Scenario 3: X.509 with CA Mode-One CA

In X.509 mode, users have to install all certificates in all systems. To simplify this process, users can obtain the certificate from the CA (Certificate Authority). When using certificates from the CA, each system needs to install the same CA (.crt) to allow each system to identify different certificates from different systems. Every certificate must be issued by the same CA. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install the CA and build an IPsec VPN connection.



## Scenario 4: X.509 with CA Mode-Two CAs

In some large-scale systems, users may find it difficult to get certificates from one CA and therefore need to get certificates from different CAs. This scenario applies to the X.509 CA mode. Users have to install all CAs (.crt) into all systems to enable every system to recognize certificates from different CAs and subsequently allow identification of all the different systems. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install the CA (.crt) and certificates (.p12) to build an IPsec VPN or OpenVPN connection.



## Scenario 5: X.509 with CA Mode-Certificate from CSR

For the previous four user scenarios, even when systems use certificates to identify each other before establishing a VPN connection, there is still a risk that someone can steal the certificate and pretend to be part of the trusted system.

The Certificate Signing Request (CSR) function in X.509 with CA mode is designed to minimize this risk. CSR is a request issued by a single system for certificates issued by the CA. Through CSR, the certificate belongs only to one system and cannot be installed on other systems. By following this method, CSR significantly reduces the risk of certificates being used illegitimately.

Consider the following example using System A and System B. The CSR working model is System A or B issues a CSR (.csr) to the CA and then the CA updates the system with the certificate (.crt) and the CA file (.crt). Next, System A or B updates the other system with the CA file (.crt). System A or B installs certificates and the CA file in the system in order to establish a VPN connection. Refer to the instructions in the diagram below to learn how to install the CA (.crt) and certificates (.crt) to build an IPsec VPN or OpenVPN connection.



EDR Security Router (A)

1. Generate Key in "Key Pair Generate", and give it a name. Here take One as an example

2. Generate CSR in "CSR Generate". Select One in "Private Key". Name this CSR in "Common Name". Here name this CSR as Certificate-1 as an example.

3. Export Certificate-1.csr file and send it to CA-1.

4. Download Certificate-1.crt and CA-1.crt from CA-1.

5. Import Certificate-1.crt file in "Local Certificate. In "Import Identity Certificate" select "Certificate From CSR". In "CSR Common Name" select Certificate-1.csr.

6. Import CA-2.crt file in "Trusted CA Certificate.

7. Enter "IPSec setting", and in "Advanced Setting", select X.509 With CA authentication mode.

8. In "Local", select No.1

#### EDR Security Router (B)

1. Generate Key in "Key Pair Generate", and give it a name. Here take Two as an example.

2. Generate CSR in "CSR Generate". Select Two in "Private Key". Name this CSR in "Common Name" Here name this CSR as Certificate-2 as an example.

3. Export Certificate-2.csr file and send it to CA-2.

4. Download Certificate-2.crt and CA-2.crt from CA-1.

5. Import Certificate-2.crt file in "Local Certificate. In "Import Identity Certificate" select "Certificate From CSR". In "CSR Common Name" select Certificate-2.csr.

6. Import CA-1.crt file in "Trusted CA Certificate.

7. Enter "IPSec setting", and in "Advanced Setting", select X.509 With CA authentication mode.

8. In "Local", select No.2
## **IPsec Status**

From the **IPsec Status** table, users can check the VPN tunnel status.

This list shows the name of the IPsec tunnel, the IP address of the Local and Remote Network/Gateway, and the status of the Key Exchange and Data Exchange phases.

37	IPSec Settings	IPSe	ec Status					
e				Q Search				
Name	Local Network	LOCal Gateway	Remote Network	Remote Gateway	xchange ase 1)	Data Exc (Phas		Time

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the information.

# L2TP Server (Layer 2 Tunnel Protocol)

L2TP is a popular choice for VPN applications with remote roaming users since an L2TP client is built into the Microsoft Windows operating system. Since L2TP does not provide any encryption, it is usually combined with IPsec to provide data encryption.

# L2TP Server Setting (WAN)

Server Setting (WAN)	User Name Settings
TP Server Mode *	
isabled	•
ocal IP	
0.0.0	_
ffered IP: Start	Offered IP: End
0.0.0	0.0.0.0

The Industrial Secure Router supports up to 10 accounts with different usernames and passwords.

L2TP Server Mode					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the L2TP function on the WAN1 or WAN2 interface.	Disabled			

Local IP					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
IP Address	0.0.0				
Offered IP: Start/Offered IP: End					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
IP Address	Specify the starting and ending IP address of the Offered IP range, used for L2TP clients.	0.0.0.0			

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **L2TP User Name Settings**

L2TP Server			
Server Setting (WAN)	User Name Settings		
٥		Q Search	
User Name			
Max.10			0 of 0

### **Create a New Account for L2TP**

Click the 
con to create a new L2TP account.

Create New Account for L2TP		
Username *		
0/32		
New Password *		
0/32		
	CANCEL	CREATE

Username					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Max. 32 characters. Enter a username for the L2TP connection. None					
New Password					
Setting	Description	Factory Default			
Max. 32 characters.	Enter the password for the L2TP connection.	None			

When finished, click **CREATE** to save your configuration.

### Modify an Existing L2TP Account

Select the item in the L2TP Account List and click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

..

### **Delete an Existing L2TP Account**

Select the item(s) in the L2TP Account List. Click the  $\blacksquare$  icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

#### **Examples of Typical VPN Applications**

## Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Pre-Shared Key

The following example shows how to create a secure LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnel between a Central and Remote site via an intranet network.



### VPN Plan

- All communication from the Central site network (100.100.1.0/24) to the Remote site Network (100.100.3.0/24) needs to pass through the VPN tunnel.
- The Intranet Network is 100.100.2.0/24.
- The configuration of the WAN/LAN interface for the 2 Industrial Secure Routers is shown in the following table.

	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router (1)	Industrial Secure Router (2)
Interface Setting	WAN IP	100.100.2.1	100.100.2.2
Interface Setting	LAN IP	100.100.1.1	100.100.3.1

Based on the requirements and VPN plan, the recommended configuration for the IPsec VPN connection is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router (1)	Industrial Secure Router (2)
	Connection Type	Site to Site	Site to Site
	Remote VPN gateway	100.100.2.2	100.100.2.1
Tunnel Setting	Startup mode	Wait for Connection	Start in Initial
Turmer Setting	Local Network/	100.100.1.0/	100.100.3.0/
	Netmask	255.255.255.0	25.255.255.0
	Remote Network/	100.100.3.0/	100.100.1.0/
	Netmask	25.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Key Exchange	Pre-Shared Key	12345	12345
Data Exchange	Encryption/Harsh	3DES/SHA-1	3DES/SHA-1

# Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Juniper systems

In this example, in order to establish a VPN tunnel, the central site router and remote site router have to know the identity of each other and use the same authentication mechanism to verify each other. Here we use a Juniper SSG5 as an example to elaborate how the Industrial Secure Router can build an IPsec VPN connection with Juniper systems.



### **VPN Plan**

- All communication from the Central site network (192.168.127.0/24) to the Remote site Network (192.168.128.0/24) needs to pass through the VPN tunnel.
- The Intranet Network is 10.10.10.0/24.
- The configuration of the WAN/LAN interface for the Industrial Secure Routers and Juniper SSG5 is shown in the following table.

	Configuration	EDR Series	Juniper SSG5
Router Setting	WAN IP	10.10.10.100	10.10.10.200
	LAN IP	192.168.127.254	192.168.128.254

Based on the requirements and VPN plan, the recommended configuration for the IPsec VPN connection is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	EDR Series	Juniper SSG5
	Connection Type	Site to Site	Site to Site
	Remote VPN gateway	10.10.10.200	10.10.10.100
	Startup mode	Wait for Connection	Start in Initial
	Local Network/	192.168.127.0/	192.168.128.0/
Tunnel Setting	Netmask	255.255.255.0	25.255.255.0
Turiner Setting	Remote Network/	192.168.128.0/	192.168.127.0/
	Netmask	25.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
		IP address	IP address
	Identity	Local ID: 10.10.10.100	Local ID: 10.10.10.200
		Remote ID: 10.10.10.200	Remote ID: 10.10.10.100
Koy Eychango	Authentication mode	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 with	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 with
Key Exchange	Authentication mode	СА	CA
Data Exchange	Encryption / Harsh	3DES/SHA-1	3DES/SHA-1

Note that to establish a VPN connection with Juniper systems, the Identity should set to "**IP Address**" and the authentication mode should set to "**Pre-Shared Key**" or "**X.509 with CA**". During the EDR Series compliance test with the Juniper SSG5, all Identity modes except "IP Address" and all authentication modes except "X.509 with CA" did not work with the Juniper SSG5. A summary of settings for VPN connections with Juniper systems is listed in the table below.

EDR Series VPN settings for		Authentication mode					
compatibility with Juniper systems		Pre-shared Key	X.509	X.509 With CA			
	IP Address	Supported	Not supported	Supported			
Identity	FQDN						
Identity	Key ID	Not supported					
	Auto(with Cisco)						

# Site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel with Cisco systems

To build up a VPN tunnel, the central site router and remote site router have to know the identity of each other and use the same authentication mechanism to verify each other. Here we take Cisco's ASA5510 as example to elaborate how the Industrial Secure Router builds an IPsec VPN connection with Cisco systems.

In this example, in order to establish a VPN tunnel, the central site router and remote site router have to know the identity of each other and use the same authentication mechanism to verify each other. Here we use a Cisco ASA5510 as an example to elaborate how the Industrial Secure Router can build an IPsec VPN connection with Cisco systems.



### **VPN Plan**

- All communication from the Central site network (192.168.127.0/24) to the Remote site Network (192.168.128.0/24) needs to pass through the VPN tunnel.
- The Intranet Network is 10.10.10.0/24
- The configuration of the WAN/LAN interface for the Industrial Secure Routers and Cisco ASA5510 is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	EDR Series	Cisco ASA5510
Douton Cotting	WAN IP	10.10.10.100	10.10.10.200
Router Setting	LAN IP	192.168.127.254	192.168.128.254

Based on the requirements and VPN plan, the recommended configuration for the IPsec VPN connection is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	EDR Series	Cisco ASA5510
	Connection Type	Site to Site	Site to Site
	Remote VPN gateway	10.10.10.200	10.10.10.100
	Startup mode	Wait for Connection	Start in Initial
Tunnel Setting	Local Network /	192.168.127.0/	192.168.128.0/
Turiner Setting	Netmask	255.255.255.0	25.255.255.0
	Remote Network /	192.168.128.0/	192.168.127.0/
	Netmask	25.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
	Identity	Auto(with Cisco)	
Key Exchange	Authentication mode	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 With	Pre-Shared Key or X.509 With
Key Excilalitye	Authentication mode	CA	CA
Data Exchange	Encryption/Harsh	3DES/SHA-1	3DES/SHA-1

Note that when establishing a VPN connection with Cisco systems, all authentication modes except "X.509" are supported.

When using Pre-shared Key authentication, the Identity can be set to "**IP Address**", "**FQDN**", "**Key ID**", or "**Auto (with Cisco)**". When using X.509 with CA authentication, the Identity must be set to "**Auto (with Cisco)**".

To simplify the VPN configuration, the Industrial Secure Router supports an identity called **"Auto(with Cisco)"** which can be used alongside Pre-shared Key and X.509 with CA authentication.

A summary of settings for VPN connections with Cisco systems is listed in the table below.

EDR Series VPN Settings for		Authentication mode			
compatibility with Cisco systems		Pre-shared Key	X.509	X.509 With CA	
	IP Address	Address Supported			
Tdontitu	FQDN	Supported	Not supported	Not supported	
Identity	Key ID	Supported	Not supported		
	Auto(with Cisco)	Supported		Supported	

# L2TP for Remote User Maintenance

The following example shows how roaming users can use L2TP over IPsec to connect to the remote site network.



### **VPN** Plan

- All communication from the Roaming user (no fixed IP) to the Remote site Network (100.100.3.0/24) needs to pass through the VPN tunnel.
- Communication goes through the Internet.
- The configuration of the WAN/LAN interface for the Industrial Secure Router is shown in the following table.

	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router (1)
Interface Setting	WAN IP	100.100.2.1
Interface Setting	LAN IP	100.100.3.1

Based on the requirements and VPN plan, the recommended configuration for the IPsec VPN connection is shown in the following table:

	Configuration	Industrial Secure Router (1)
	L2TP Server Mode (WAN1)	Enable
L2TP Server Setting	Local IP (L2TP Server IP)	100.100.4.1
LZTP Server Setting	Offer IP Range	100.100.4.1 ~ 100.100.4.100
	Login User/Password	User01/12345
	Connection Type	Site to Site(Any)
Tunnel Setting	L2TP Tunnel	Enable
runner setting	Local Network	100.100.3.1/24 (Same as LAN Interface)
	Startup mode	Wait for Connection
Key Exchange	Pre-Shared Key	12345
Data Exchange	Encryption Algorithm	3DES
	Harsh Algorithm	SHA-1

For the purposes of this document, certificate management refers to the X.509 SSL certificate. X.509 is a digital certificate method commonly used for IPsec, OpenVPN, and HTTPS authentication. The Industrial Secure Router can act as a Root CA (Certificate Authority) and issue a trusted Root Certificate. Alternatively, users can import certificates from other CAs into the Industrial Secure Router.

Certificates are a time-based form of authentication. Before processing certificates, please ensure that the industrial secure router is synced with the local device. For more information about syncing device time, please refer to the <u>Time</u> section.

From the **Certificate Management** section, you can configure **Local Certificate**, **Trusted CA Certificate**, and **Certificate Signing Request** settings.



# **Local Certificate**

From the **Local Certificates** screen, users can import certificates issued by the CA into the Industrial Secure Router.

Depending on the selected certificate, some settings may differ. Refer to the following sections: <u>Import a Certificate</u>

Import a Certificate From CSR Import a Certificate from PKCS#12

Local	Cert	ificate

Ð				
🗌 Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	
lax. 10				0 of 0

# **Import a Certificate**

cal Certific	ate			
Ŧ				
🗌 Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	

## Click the 🛨 icon to add a certificate.

Generate Certificate	
Import Identity Certifi •	
Label	
0/30	
Select Certificate *	
	CANCEL

#### Import Identity Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Certificate,			
Certificate from CSR,	Calact Cartificate as the cortificate type	Certificate	
Certificate from	Select Certificate as the certificate type.	Certificate	
PKCS#12			

### Label

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 30	Specify the certification number.	None

### Select Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
select a certificate file	Upload a certificate from the local computer. <b>Certificat</b> e uses the .crt file extension. <b>Certificate from CSR</b> is a certificate issued by another CA. <b>Certificate from PKCS#12</b> uses the .p12 file extension.	None

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{UPGRADE}}$  to import the selected certificate.

# **Import a Certificate From CSR**

When importing a Certificate From CSR, you must browse to the certificate file before selecting the CSR Common Name.

ocal Certifica	ate			
➡ □ Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	
Max. 10				0 of 0

### Click the 🖬 icon to add a certificate.

Generate Certificate		
Import Identity Certificate Certificate From CSR -		
Label		
CSR Common Name * 👻		
Select Certificate *		
	CANCEL	UPGRADE

### Import Identity Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Certificate,		
Certificate from CSR,	Select <b>Certificate From CSR</b> as the certificate type.	Certificate
Certificate from	Select <b>Certificate From CSR</b> as the certificate type.	Certificate
PKCS#12		

Label Description

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 30	Specify the certification number.	None

### CSR Common Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default	
Domain namo	Select the CSR Common Name. This is the domain name the	None	
Domain name	certificate will apply to.		

### Select Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Upload a certificate from the local computer.	
Click the 🗖 icon to	Certificate uses the .crt file extension.	Nama
select a certificate file	<b>Certificate from CSR</b> is a certificate issued by another CA.	None
	Certificate from PKCS#12 uses the .p12 file extension.	

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to import the selected certificate.

# Import a Certificate from PKCS#12

When importing the Certificate from PKCS#12, you must browse to the certificate file before entering the Import Password.

cal Certifica	ate			
Ð				
Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	
Max. 10				D of D

### Click the 🖬 icon to add a certificate.

Generate Certificate		
Import Identity Certificate Certificate From PKC		
Label		
Import Password *		
0 / 32 Select Certificate *	-	
	CANCEL	UPGRADE

### Import Identity Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Certificate,		
Certificate from CSR,	Colort Contificate From DVCC#12 on the contificate true	Cartificate
Certificate from	Select <b>Certificate From PKCS#12</b> as the certificate type.	Certificate
PKCS#12		

Label		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 30	Specify the certification number.	None

#### Import Password

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 32 characters	Enter the import password.	None

### Select Certificate

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Upload a certificate from the local computer.	
Click the 🗖 icon to	Certificate uses the .crt file extension.	None
select a certificate file	<b>Certificate from CSR</b> is a certificate issued by another CA.	None
	Certificate from PKCS#12 uses the .p12 file extension.	

When finished, click **UPGRADE** to import the selected certificate.

# **Trusted CA Certificate**

# **Import a CA Certificate**

From the **Trusted CA Certificate** screen, users can import a trusted CA into the Industrial Secure Router. It is recommended that the user imports a trusted CA in advance. Otherwise, the Industrial Secure Router may not recognize the certificate and reject the connection.

### **Trusted CA Certificate**

Ð		
Name Name	Subject	
4ax. 10		0 of D

Click the 🖬 icon to add a CA Certificate.

Generate CA Certificate		
Select CA Certificate *		
	CANCEL	UPGRADE

Click the 🗖 icon to select a CA certificate file, then click **UPGRADE** to import the certificate.

# **Certificate Signing Request**

From the Certificate Signing Request screen, users can generate key pairs and the CSR.

Q Search
0 of 0
t

To get a certificate from the CA for connection purposes, users must follow the two-step process below. <u>Step 1: Generate a Private Key</u> <u>Step 2: Generate the CSR</u>

# **Key Pair Generate**

### Step 1: Generate a Private Key

Before sending the Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to the CA, the CSR must include a public key that can be generated together with a private key. The user can use the private key to encrypt data while the receiver can use the public key to decrypt the data.

## **Certificate Signing Request**

•		Q Search	
🗌 Name	Key Pair Size		
Max. 10			0 of 0

Click the 🖬 icon to generate a RSA key.

Generate RS/	A Key	
Name *		
	0/30	
Key Pair Size *	-	

#### Name

Setting	Description	Factory Default
0 to 30 characters	Enter a name for the RSA key.	None

Key Pair Size

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1024 Bit or 2048 Bit	Select the key pair size of each private key.	None

When finished, click **GENERATE** to generate the RSA key.

To delete the RSA key, select the RSA key in the RSA key List and click the **I** icon, then click **DELETE** to delete the RSA key.

# **CSR** Generate

### Step 2: Generate the CSR

Certificate Si	gning Request		
Key Pair Generate	CSR Generate		
٥		Q, Search	
Name	Subject		
Max. 10			0.of 0

After generating the private key, click the 🖿 icon to generate the CSR.

Private Key * 👻		
Country Name (2 letter	Locality Name *	
At least 2 characters 0 / 2	0/16	
Organization Name *	Organizational Unit Na	
0/16	0/16	
Common Name *	Email Address *	
0/16	0 / 64	
Subject Alternative Na		
0/16		
	CANCEL	GENERATE

Private Key		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Private Key	Select the private key generated on the Key Pair Generate tab. If you have not generated a private key yet, refer to <u>Step</u> <u>1: Generate a Private Key</u> .	None
Country Name (2 lett	er code)	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
At least 2 characters	Enter the country code for the CSR.	None
Locality Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the locality name for the CSR.	None

Organization Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the organization name for the CSR.	None
Organization Unit N	ame	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the organization unit name for the CSR.	None
Common Name		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the common name for the CSR.	None
Email Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 64 characters	Enter the email address for the CSR.	None
Subject Alternative	Name	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 16 characters	Enter the subject alternative name for the CSR.	None

When finished, click **GENERATE** to generate the CSR.

To delete the CSR, select the CSR in Certificate List and click the **i** icon, then click **DELETE** to delete the CSR.

From the **Security** section, you can configure **Device Security**, **Network Security**, **RADIUS**, and **MXview Alert Notification** settings.



# **Device Security**

From the **Device Security** section, the following functions can be configured: **Login Policy**, **Trusted Access**, and **SSH & SSL**.



# **Login Policy**

Login Message	ogin Policy			
0 / 512         Login Authentication Failure Message         0 / 512         Login Failure Account Lockout         Disabled         Image: Comparison of the state of the				
Login Authentication Failure Message O / 512 Login Failure Account Lockout Disabled Login Failure Retry Threshold * 5 1 - 10 times Lockcut Duration * 5 1 - 10 mh Auto Logout Atter * 5 0 - 1440 min	Login Message			
Disabled v Login Failure Account Lockout Disabled v Login Failure Retry Threshold * 5 1 - 10 times Lockout Duration * 5 1 - 10 mn Auto Logout After * 5 0 - 1440 min		0 / 512		
ogin Failure Account Lockout isabled  ogin Failure Retry Threshold *  - 10 times ockout Duration *  - 10 min uto Logout After *  - 1440 min	ogin Authentication Failure Message			
Disabled   Login Failure Retry Threshold *   5   1- 10 times   Lockcaut Duration *   5   1- 10   Natio Logout After *   5   0- 1440		0 / 512		
5         1 - 10 times         Lockout Duration *         5         1 - 10       min         Auto Logout After *         5         0 - 1440       min				
1 - 10 times Lockout Duration * 5 1 - 10 min Auto Logout After * 5 0 - 1440 min	ogin Failure Retry Threshold *			
Lookout Duration * 5 1 - 10 min Auto Logout Atter * 5 0 - 1440 min	5			
5 min 4 to Logout Atter * 5 min	- 10 times			
1 - 10 min Auto Logout After * 5 D- 1440 min				
Auto Logout After * 5 0 - 1440 min	5			
5 )- 1440 min	- 10 min			
0-1440 min				
	5			
ADDIV	- 1440 min			
	APPLY			

#### Login Message

Login Message		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 512 characters	Enter a welcome message that will appear when users log in to the device.	None
Login Authentication	Failure Message	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 512 characters	Enter the message that will appear if the user failed to log in.	None

Login Failure Account	Lockout	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the lockout function which will temporarily prevent users from logging in after several failed login attempts.	Disabled

### Login Failure Retry Threshold

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 10 times	Specify the number of login retry attempts before the user is locked out.	5

### Lockout Duration

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Specify the lockout duration (in minutes). During this time, the locked-out user will be unable to log in.	5

### Auto Logout After

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 1440 minutes	When the user is idle for the specified duration, the user will be automatically logged out from the device. The default duration is 5 minutes.	5

# **Trusted Access**

The EDR-G9010 Series uses an IP address-based filtering method to control access to the device.

Trusted Access	
Trusted IP List (Disabling this will allow all IP connections) Enabled	<b>*</b>
Accept All LAN Port Connections Enabled	<b>*</b>
Log Severity Disabled ~ <0> Emergency	✓ Log Destination ✓
APPLY	
<b>D</b> 1Ξ	Q Search
Index Status IP Address	Netmask
Max. 10	0 to 0
APPLY	

#### Trusted IP List

musicu ir List		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enable or disable the Trusted IP list. If enabled, only IP	
	addresses in the Trusted IP table can access the device. Refer	
Enabled or Disabled	Create a Trusted Access Entry for more information.	Enabled
	If this option is disabled, any IP address can access the	
	device.	

Accept All LAN Port	Connections	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the device to accept all connections on the	Enabled
	LAN interface.	LIIdbleu
Log		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Trusted Access event logs.	Disabled

Severity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
<0> Emergency		
<1> Alert		
<2> Critical		
<3> Error	Colort the coverity of the Trusted Access event	
<4> Warning	Select the severity of the Trusted Access event.	<0> Emergency
<5> Notice		
<6> Informational		
<7> Debug		

Log Destination		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Local Storage, Syslog, Trap	If Log is enabled, select the Trusted Access event log storage location.	None

### **Create a Trusted Access Entry**

You can control which IP addresses can have access to the Moxa Industrial Secure Router by adding them to the Trusted Access list. If enabled, only addresses on the list will be allowed access to the Moxa Industrial Secure Router.

Click 
to add an IP address to the Trusted Access list.

Create Index	1		
Status * Enabled	•		
500-55889255550			
IP Address *			
Netmask *			
			_
		CANCEL	API

Each IP address and netmask entry can be tailored to different situations:

- Grant access to one host with a specific IP address For example, enter IP address 192.168.1.1 with netmask 255.255.255.255 to allow access to 192.168.1.1 only.
- Grant access to any host on a specific subnetwork
   For example, enter IP address 192.168.1.0 with netmask 255.255.255.0 to allow access to all IPs on the subnet defined by this IP address/Netmask combination.

#### • Grant access to all hosts

Disable the Trusted Access list. Select **Disabled** in **Trusted IP List (Disabling this will allow all IP connections)**.

The following table shows additional configuration examples:

Hosts That Need Access	Input Format
Any host	Disable
192.168.1.120	192.168.1.120 / 255.255.255.255
192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.254	192.168.1.0 / 255.255.255.0
192.168.0.1 to 192.168.255.254	192.168.0.0 / 255.255.0.0
192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.126	192.168.1.0 / 255.255.255.128
192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254	192.168.1.128 / 255.255.255.128

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Trusted Access entry.	None
	,	

### IP Address

Setting	Description	Factory Default
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the Trusted host(s).	None
	·	

#### Netmask

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask of the Trusted host(s).	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Modify a Trusted Access Entry**

Click the 🖍 next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### **Delete a Trusted Access Entry**

Select the entry from the Trusted Access List and click the  $\blacksquare$  icon, then click **DELETE** to delete it.

# SSH & SSL

### SSH

The Industrial Secure Router will generate a SSH certificate automatically by default. If not, click **REGENERATE** to regenerate the SSH host key.

SSH & SSL		
SSH	SSL	
Created on Jul 8 13:10:45 2022	GMT	
Regenerate SSH Key		
REGENERATE		

## SSL

On the SSL page, you can generate an SSL certificate.

1772220	SSL
Certificate Source *	
Auto Generate	9
Created on	
L.L. 0.10.10.11.0000.0	CNAT
JUI 8 13.10.44 ZUZZ (	
Jul 8 13:10:44 2022 ( features.ssh_ssi.expired_dat Jul 4 13:10:44 2036 (	e

### Certificate Source

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Auto Generate	The Industrial Secure Router will generate a certificate	Auto Generate
	automatically.	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select the certificate you want to import into the Local	
Local Certificate	Certificate Database. The certificate that can be loaded here is	
Database	limited to "Certificate from CSR" and "Certificate From	
	PKCS#12".	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# **Network Security**

The Industrial Secure Router supports IEEE 802.1X network security authentication.



# **IEEE 802.1X**

IEEE 802.1X provides an authentication mechanism to prevent unauthorized access to the LAN. Without this mechanism, users can access the LAN by simply physically connecting to any LAN device on the network. IEEE 802.1X enhances network security by providing a procedure to authenticate and authorize users who attempt to access the network.

## **General Settings**

EEE 802.1X				
General	IEEE 802.1x Status	RADIUS	Local Database	
Authentication Mode *				
Local Database	•			
Authentication Retry *				
Enabled	•			
Authentication Retry Inter 3600	val *			
60 - 65535	sec			
APPLY				

#### Authentication Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
RADIUS, Local		
Database, or both	Select the authentication server user account database.	Local Database
RADIUS, Local		

#### Authentication Retry

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable reauthentication.	Enabled

### Authentication Retry Interval

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	If Authentication Retry is enabled, specify the authentication retry interval (in second).	3600

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## Modify IEEE 802.1X Port Settings

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the port status.

C				Q Search	
		Port	Status		
1	$\bigotimes$	1/1	Disabled		
i	$\langle g \rangle$	1/2	Disabled		
1	$\bigotimes$	1/3	Disabled		
ï	$\bigcirc$	1/4	Disabled		
r	$\langle 0 \rangle$	1/5	Disabled		
i	$\bigotimes$	1/6	Disabled		
1	Q	1/7	Disabled		
i	$\langle 0 \rangle$	1/8	Disabled		
i	Q	1/9	Disabled		
1	$\bigotimes$	1/10	Disabled		
					10 of 10

To configure the IEEE 802.1X settings for a specific port, click the 🖍 icon next to the port.

Port 1/1 Set	tings	
Enabled *		
Disabled	*	

#### Enabled

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable IEEE 802.1X port access control for this port.	Disabled

### **IEEE 802.1x Status**

This page shows the IEEE 802.1X status of each port, supplicant, user, and port status information.

EE 802.1)	(							
General	IEEE 802.1x Status	RADIUS	Local Database					
с			Q Search					
Port Suppli	cant User	Port Status						
			Items per page: 50	0 of 0	<	<	>	>



### RADIUS

RADIUS **Remote Authentication Dial in User Service** is a protocol that involves three services in one network protocol: Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA). The protocol operates on port 1812, and the AAA management for users connecting to a network service.

RADIUS is based on a client/server protocol that runs in the application layer and can use either TCP or UDP as the mode of transport. The network access servers that contain the RADIUS protocol can allow the client to communicate with the RADIUS server. Through Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting, RADIUS is used to monitor access to the network.

General	IEE	E 802.1x Status	RADIUS	Local Database
Server Address 1		Port 1812		
	0/64	1 - 65535		
Share Key	8			
	0/30			
Server Address 2		Port 1812		
	0/64	1 - 65535		
Share Key	8			
	0/30			

#### **RADIUS Server Settings**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Server Address 1/2	Specify the first and second RADIUS authentication server IP	None
(0 to 64)	address or server name.	None
UDP Port (1 to 65535)	Specify the first and second RADIUS server port number.	1812

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Shared key (max. 60 characters)	Specify the shared key for the first and second RADIUS server.	None

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.



## NOTE

The system will use the primary RADIUS server by default. If the primary RADIUS is unavailable, it will use the secondary RADIUS server.

## Local Database

General	IEEE 802.1x Status	RADIUS	Local Database	
Ð			Q Search	
Username	<b>1</b>			

Click the 🖿 icon to create add a user account to the local database.

Create Accou	unt Settings		
Username			
	0/30		
Password *	ø		
	0/16		
Password *	Ø		
	0/16		
		CANCEL	APPLY

### Username

Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Max. 30 characters	Enter the username for this account.	None				
Password						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Max. 16 characters	Enter the password for this user account. Confirm the password.	None				

### **Delete an Existing Local Database Entry**

Select the user account(s) in the Account List. Click the **\overline{a}** icon and click **DELETE** to delete the selected user account(s).

# RADIUS

Users can set up two RADIUS servers, one primary and one secondary backup server. When the primary RADIUS server becomes unavailable, the EDR-G9010 Series will switch to the backup RADIUS server.

# **RADIUS Server**

RADIUS * Disabled	•		
Authentication Type * EAP-PEAP MSCHAP	- -		
LAF-FLAF MOUNAF	VZ *		
		UDP Port	
Server Address 1		1812	
		1 - 65535	
Share Key	8		
	0 / 60		
		UDP Port	
Server Address 2		1812	
-		1 - 65535	
Share Key	8		
-	0/60		

#### RADIUS

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable RADIUS login authentication.	Disabled
	•	·

#### Authentication Type

///		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
PAP		EAP-PEAP
СНАР	Select the authentication type for the RADIUS server.	MSCHAPv2
EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2	]	MISCHAPVZ

### **RADIUS Server Setting**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Server Address 1/2	Specify the first and second RADIUS authentication server IP	None
(0 to 64)	address or server name.	None
UDP Port (1 to 65535)	Specify the first and second RADIUS server port number.	1812
Shared key (max. 60	Specify the shared key for the first and second RADIUS	None
characters)	server.	None

# **MXview Alert Notification**

# **Security Notification Setting**

If event notifications are enabled, the EDR-G9010 will send an SNMP Trap to notify the server.

Security Notification Setting	Security Status
Firewall Event Notification *	
Disabled 👻	
DoS Attack Event Notification *	
Disabled -	
Access Violation Event Notificat	
Disabled 👻	
Login Fail Event Notification *	
Disabled 👻	

### Firewall Event Notification

rnewan Event Notification						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable notifications for Firewall events.	Disabled				
DoS Attack Event No	tification					
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable notifications for DoS attack events.	Disabled				
Access Violation Event Notification						
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable notifications for Access Violation events.	Disabled				
Login Fail Event Noti	ification					
Setting	Description	Factory Default				
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable notifications for Login Fail events.	Disabled				

# **Security Status**

The Security Status screen shows the status of all event types. Click the **I** icon to clear all event statuses.

Xview Alert	Notif	ication								
Security Notification Set	tting	Security Status	_							
<b>İ</b> ?				<b>Q</b> Search						
Event	Statu	IS								
Firewall	safe									
DoS Attack	safe									
Access Violation	safe									
Login Fail	safe									
Max. 10				Items per page: 5 —	0 🔻	1 - 4 of 4	<	<	>	$\geq$

Through the Diagnostics section, you can keep track of the system and network performance, consult event logs, and check the status of the port connectors.

The Industrial Secure Router also provides **Port Mirror** and **Ping** tools for administrators to diagnose network systems.

From the **Diagnostics** section, you can configure the **System Status**, **Network Status**, **Event Logs and Notifications**, and **Tools** configurations.



# **System Status**

Users can monitor the data transmission activity of all the Industrial Secure Router ports from two perspectives, **Bandwidth Utilization** and **Packet Counter**. The graph displays data transmission activity by showing Utilization/Sec or Packet/Sec (i.e., packets per second, or pps) versus Min:Sec. (Minutes: Seconds). The graph is updated every 5 seconds, allowing the user to analyze data transmission activity in real-time.

From the System Status section, the following functions can be configured: Utilization, and Fiber Check.



# Utilization

On the **Utilization** page, you can view the system resource utilization history, including the current and historical CPU and memory usage.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon on the upper-right corner of each graph to refresh the data.



## **Fiber Check**

Fiber Check is used to diagnose the link status of fiber connectors, including SFP and fixed type (Multi-mode SC/ST and Single-mode SC) connectors. Fiber Check allows you to monitor the temperature, TX/RX power, and other parameters on fiber ports to determine if the ports are working properly. Enable the trap, email warning, and/or relay warning functions on the System Event Settings page to receive an alarm or relay if one of the fiber ports exceeds the threshold for that port.

abled	-							
PPLY								
c						Q Search		
			Current	Max	Current TX	Max./Min. TX	Current RX	Min. RX

Fiber Check		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or disabled	Enable or disable the Fiber Check function.	Disabled

### Fiber Check table

The Fiber Check table displays the following information:

Field	Description
Port	The switch port number hosting the fiber connection.
Model Name	The name of the SFP module.
SN	The serial number of the SFP module.
Wavelength (nm)	The wavelength of the fiber connection.
VccV	The voltage supply to the fiber connection.
Current Temperature (°C)	The current temperature of the fiber connection.
Max. Temperature (°C)	The maximum temperature threshold the fiber connection supports.
Current TX Power(dBm)	The current amount of light transmitted over the fiber-optic cable.
Max./Min. TX Power(dBm)	The maximum/minimum amount of light the fiber optic cable can transmit.
Current RX Power(dBm)	The current amount of light received over the fiber optic cable.
Min. RX Power(dBm)	The minimum amount of light the fiber optic cable can receive.

### Fiber Check Threshold Values

Model Name	Temperature	Max./Min. Tx Power			
Model Name	Threshold (°C)	(dBm)	Min. Rx Power (dBm)		
FEMST	120	-11.0/-23.0	-31.0		
FEMSC	120	-11.0/-23.0	-31.0		
FESSC	120	3.0/-8.0	-34.0		
SFP-1FEMLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0			
SFP-1FESLC-T	120	3.0/-8.0	-37.0		
SFP-1FELLC-T	120	3.0/-8.0	-37.0		
SFP-1GSXLC-T	110	-1.0/-12.5	-18.0		
SFP-1GLSXLC-T	120	2.0/-12.0	-19.0		
SFP-1GLXLC-T	120	0.0/-12.5	-20.0		
SFP-1GLHLC-T	120	1.0/-11.0	-23.0		
SFP-1GLHXLC-T	120	4.0/-7.0	-24.0		
SFP-1GZXLC-T	120	8.0/-3.0	-24.0		
SFP-1G10ALC-T	120	0.0/-12.0	-21.0		
SFP-1G10BLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0		
SFP-1G20ALC-T	120	1.0/-11.0	-23.0		
SFP-1G20BLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0		
SFP-1G40ALC-T	120	5.0/-6.0	-23.0		
SFP-1G40BLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0		
SFP-1GSXLC	100	-1.0/-12.5	-18.0		
SFP-1GLSXLC	100	2.0/-12.0	-19.0		
SFP-1GLXLC	100	0.0/-12.5	-20.0		
SFP-1GLHLC	100	1.0/-11.0	-23.0		
SFP-1GLHXLC	100	4.0/-7.0	-24.0		
SFP-1GZXLC	100	8.0/-3.0	-24.0		
SFP-1GEZXLC	100	8.0/-3.0	-30.0		
SFP-1GEZXLC-120	100	6.0/-5.0	-33.0		
SFP-1G10ALC	100	0.0/-12.0	-21.0		
SFP-1G10BLC	100	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0		
SFP-1G20ALC	100	1.0/-11.0	-23.0		
SFP-1G20BLC	100	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0		
SFP-1G40ALC	100	5.0/-6.0	-23.0		
SFP-1G40BLC	100	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0		



## NOTE

Certain tolerances exist between real data and measured data.

# **Network Status**

From the **Network Status** section, the following functions can be configured: **Network Statistics**, **LLDP**, and **ARP Table**.

Network Status	^
Network Statistics	
LLDP	
ARP Table	

# **Network Statistics**

The Network Statistics page shows the Packet Counter status by default.

To switch views, click the **Packet Counter** drop-down menu and select **Bandwidth Utilization** to see the current bandwidth usage.

Network Statistics					
Packet Counter 🗸					
Packet Counter					
Bandwidth Utilization					

### Display Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Select which statistics to show.	
Packet Counter,	Refer to the following sections for more information:	Packet Counter
Bandwidth Utilization	Packet Counter	Packet Counter
	Bandwidth Utilization	

### **Packet Counter**

In the **Packet Counter** view, users can monitor the total amount of packets per second for each interface (**IP Interface**), each port, or port group (**Ports**). Users can choose which packet flows to monitor, **TX Packets**, **RX Packets**, or both (**TX/RX**). **TX Packets** are packets sent out from the Industrial Secure Router while **RX Packets** are packets received from connected devices. Additionally, users can also choose which packet types to monitor, including unicast, broadcast, multicast, and error.



There are three function icons in the upper-right corner of the page. The table below provides a description for each function.

Ic	on	Name	Description
	G	Refresh	Refresh all statistical data immediately.
	Î.	Reset Statistics Graph	Click this icon, then click CLEAR to clear the packet counter and reset the graph.
	≡,∕		Configure which information is shown on the graph. Refer to <u>Display Settings</u> for more information.

### **Display Settings**

Display Setting	S		
Display Type *			
IP Interface			
Interface Selection *			
Any	•		
Sniffer Mode *			
Tx+Rx			
Package Type *			
All Packets			

### Display Type

Setting Description		Factory Default
Port	Monitor the total traffic per port or port group (FE Ports/GbE ports).	IP Interface
IP Interface	Monitor the total traffic per interface, e.g. LAN, WAN, Bridge.	

#### Interface Selection

Setting	Description	Factory Default
	If Display Type is set to IP Interface, select which interface to	Anv
LAN	monitor traffic for.	/ wry

#### Port Selection

Setting	Description	Factory Default		
All ports, FE Ports,				
GE Ports, Port 1, Port	If Dianlay, Type is get to David, colocity, which next an next array of			
2, Port 3, Port 4, Port	If Display Type is set to Port, select which port or port group to monitor traffic for.	All ports		
5, Port 6, Port 7, Port				
8, Port G1, Port G2				

#### Sniffer Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
TX+RX, TX, RX	Select which packet flow to monitor.	TX+RX

#### Packet Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
All Packets, Unicast,		
Broadcast, Multicast,	Select which packet type to monitor.	All Packets
Error Packets		

When finished, click **ADD** to save your display settings.

Each type of data is represented by a different color, as shown below:

IP Interface(Any)Tx+Rx(All Packets)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Unicast)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Broadcast)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Multicast)
Port(All)Tx+Rx(Error Packets)

### Packet Interface Table

The packet flow format is Total Packets + Packets in the past 5 seconds. The data is updated every 5 seconds.

## **Bandwidth Utilization**

Select **Bandwidth Utilization** from the drop-down menu in the **Network Statistics** page to view the current bandwidth usage.

### **Network Statistics**



There are three function icons in the upper-right corner of the page. The table below provides a description for each function.

Icon		Name	Description
C Refresh		Refresh	Refresh all statistical data immediately.
í	ĪF	Reset Statistics Granh	Click this icon, then click CLEAR to clear the bandwidth usage data and reset the graph.
Ξ	=,	Disniav Settings	Configure which information is shown on the graph. Refer to <u>Display Settings</u> for more information.

## **Display Settings**

Display Settin	gs	
Display Type IP Interface	•	
Interface Selection *		
Any	•	
Sniffer Mode *		
Tx+Rx	•	

### Display Type

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Port	Monitor the total traffic per port or port group (FE Ports/GbE ports).	IP Interface
IP Interface	Monitor the total traffic per interface, e.g. LAN, WAN, Bridge.	

#### Interface Selection

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Any, LAN, WAN, Bridge LAN	Select which interface to monitor traffic for.	Any

### Sniffer Mode

Setting	Description	Factory Default
TX+RX, TX, RX	Select which packet flow to monitor.	TX+RX

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{ADD}}$  to save your display settings.

# LLDP

## **LLDP Function Overview**

Defined by IEEE 802.11AB, Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is an OSI Layer 2 protocol that standardizes the methodology of self-identity advertisement. It allows each networking device, such as a Moxa managed switch/router, to periodically inform its neighbors about itself and its configuration. This way, all devices are aware of each other.

LLDP can be enabled or disabled. Additionally, users can configure the interval at which LLDP packets are sent and view each switch's neighbor-list, which is reported by its network neighbors.

## **LLDP Settings**

Settings	Status	
LLDP		
Enabled	•	
Transmit Interval 30		
5 - 32768	Sec.	

### LLDP

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the LLDP function.	Enabled
Transmit Interval		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
5 to 32768 seconds	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which LLDP messages are sent.	30 (seconds)

### **LLDP Status**

Settings	Status				
c		Qs	earch		
Port Nbr. ID	Nbr. Port	Nbr. Port Description	Nbr. System		

The LLDP table displays the following information:

Field	Description
Port	The port number that connects to the neighbor device.
Neighbor ID	A unique identifier (typically the MAC address) that identifies the neighbor device.
Neighbor Port	The port number of the connecting neighbor device.
Neighbor Port Description	The description of the neighbor device's interface.
Neighbor System	The hostname of the neighbor device.

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the table.

# **ARP** Table

The ARP table shows the device's Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) information.

C			Q Search					
Index	MAC Address	IP Address	Interface					
1	d8.5e:d3:2b:28.1d	192.168.127.197	LAN					
2	b4:2e:99:1b:f8:85	192.168.127.125	LAN					

# **Event Logs and Notifications**

From the **Event Logs and Notifications** section, the following functions can be configured: **Event Log**, **Event Notification**, **Syslog**, **SNMP Trap/Inform**, and **Email Settings**.


## **Event Log**

## System Log

By default, the **System Log** shows details of all system-related event logs.

System (	.og Firewall	Log	VPN Log	Threshold Settings	Backup	
c 🕯	•				م	Search
ndex	Timestamp	Severity	Additional message			
i	2022/7/7 9:35:2+8:00	Info	Auth Ok, Login Succes	es Account=admin ,Bootup=6	0, Startup=0d0h3m4s	
2	2022/7/7 9:34:54+8:00	Emergency	Link On Port 7 ,Bootup	=60, Startup=0d0h2m55s		
3	2022/7/7 9:34:51+8:00	Emergency	Link Off Port 1 ,Bootup	a=60, Startup=0d0h2m53s		
1	2022/7/7 9:32:44+8:00	Emergency	Link On Port 1 ,Bootup	=60, Startup=0d0h0m46s		
5	2022/7/7 9:32:13+8:00	Emergency	Power Transition (Off	-> On) Power 2 ,Bootup=60, S	tartup=0d0h0m14s	
5	2022/7/7 9:32:11+8:00	Emergency	Cold Start "Bootup=60	, Startup=0d0h0m13s		
	2022/7/6 22:28:46+8:00	Emergency	Configuration Change	Port-Based Access Control 8	Setting ,Bootup=59, Start	up=0d1h45m48s
3	2022/7/6 22:28:25+8:00	Emergency	Configuration Change	Port-Based Access Control S	Setting ,Bootup=59, Start	up=0d1h45m27s
9	2022/7/6 22:28:15+8:00	Emergency	Configuration Change	Port-Based Access Control S	Setting "Bootup=59, Start	up=0d1h45m17s
10	2022/7/6 22:27:29+8:00	Emergency	Configuration Change	Port-Based Access Control S	Setting Bootup=59 Start	up=0d1h44m31s

Click the  $m{C}$  icon to refresh the system logs.

Click the  $\blacksquare$  icon to delete all system logs.

Click the 🛂 icon to export all system logs to a file.

## **Firewall Log**

From the **Firewall Log** page, you can check the various types of firewall event logs. By default, the firewall logs of the Layer 3–7 Policy will be displayed.

Click the **Layer 3–7 Policy** drop-down menu to select and show the firewall logs for other policy patterns, including:

- Trusted Access
- Malformed Packets
- DoS Policy
- Layer 3 7 Policy
- Protocol Filter Policy
- ADP
- IPS
- Session Control

System Log	Firewall Log	VPN Log	Threshold Settings	Backup					
ayer 3 - 7 Policy									
c 🗊 🗉						Q Se	arch		

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the firewall logs.

Click the **I** icon to delete all firewall logs.

Click the 🛂 icon to export all firewall logs to a file.

#### **VPN** Log

The **VPN Log** table shows details for all VPN-related event logs.

System Log	Firewall Log	VPN Log	Threshold Settings	Backup		
C 🗊 🖸			Q Search			
Index Timesta	np Severity	Additional message				

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the VPN logs.

Click the **I** icon to delete all VPN logs.

Click the 🛂 icon to export all VPN logs to a file.

## **Threshold Settings**

On the **Threshold Settings** screen, users can set up capacity warnings and oversize actions that trigger when the log storage has exceeded the specified storage threshold.

Syst	em Log	Firewall Log	VPN Log	Threshold Settings	Backu	qι	
c			Q	Search			
	Status	Category Name	Warning Threshold	Oversize Action		Registered Action	
r	Disabled	System	0%	Overwrite the oldest (	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	VPN	0%	Overwrite the oldest	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	Trusted Access	0%	Overwrite the oldest	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	Malformed Packets	0%	Overwrite the oldest (	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	DoS Policy	0%	Overwrite the oldest (	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	Layer 3 - 7 Policy	0%	Overwrite the oldest (	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	Protocol Filter Policy	0%	Overwrite the oldest (	event log	Trap,Email	
r	Disabled	ADP	0%	Overwrite the oldest (	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	IPS	0%	Overwrite the oldest (	event log	Trap,Email	
1	Disabled	Session Control	0%	Overwrite the oldest	event log	Trap,Email	

Click the  ${f C}$  icon to refresh the threshold settings.

Click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the entry you want to modify.

Capacity Warning * Disabled	-		
8			
Warning Threshold			
0			
50 - 100	96		
Registered Action			
Trap, Email			
Oversize Action *			
Overwrite the olde	st event loa	-	

#### Capacity Warning

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable capacity warnings. The Registered Action can be configured for individual events by editing the event on the <u>Event Notifications</u> page.	Disabled

#### Warning Threshold

Setting	Description	Factory Default
50 to 100 %	Specify the threshold percentage of the current storage. Once	٥
50 10 100 %	the storage exceeds this value, the warning will trigger.	0

#### **Registered Action**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Trap, Email	Select how the warning is sent.	Trap, Email

<b>Oversize Action</b>		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Overwrite the oldest		
event log,	Coloct the eventing patien when the log sternes is full	Overwrite the oldest
Stop recording event	Select the oversize action when the log storage is full.	event log
logs		

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## Backup

From the **Backup** screen, users can enable automatic event log backups.

System Log	Firewall Log	VPN Log	Threshold Settings	Backup
to Backup of Ev	vent Log			
omatically Restore *				
abled	×			

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable automatic event log backups.	Enabled

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Event Notifications**

Since industrial Ethernet devices are often located at the endpoints of a system, these devices will not always know what is happening elsewhere on the network. This means that an industrial secure router that connects to these devices must provide system maintainers with real-time alarm messages. Even when control engineers are out of the control room for an extended period of time, they can still be informed of the status of devices almost instantaneously when exceptions occur. The Moxa industrial secure router supports different methods to warn engineers automatically, such as email, trap, syslog and relay output. It also supports one digital input to integrate sensors into your system to automate alarms by email and relay output.

## System Event Settings

System Events are related to the overall functions of the device. Each event can be activated independently with different warning methods. Administrator also can decide the severity of each system event.

## **Event Notifications**

S	ystem	Port		
				Q, Search
	Status	Event Name	Severity	Registered Action
i	Disabled	Cold Start	Emergency	
ï	Disabled	Warm Start	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Power 1 Transition (On->Off)	Emergency	
ï	Disabled	Power 2 Transition (On->Off)	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Power 1 Transition (Off->0n)	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Power 2 Transition (Off->0n)	Emergency	
i	Disabled	DI (Off)	Emergency	
r	Disabled	DI (On)	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Config. Change	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Auth. Failure	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Ring/RSTP Topology Changed	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Master Mismatch	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Coupling Topology Changed	Emergency	
i	Disabled	Fiber Check Warning	Emergency	
ï	Disabled	VRRP State Change	Emergency	
ï	Disabled	802.1X Auth. Failure	Emergency	
ï	Disabled	VPN Connected	Emergency	
ï	Disabled	VPN Disconnected	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Firewall Policy	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Firmware Upgrade Success	Emergency	
1	Disabled	Firmware Upgrade Failure	Emergency	
				1-21 of 21 🗸

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify.

Edit Event Notifi	cation		
Event Name			
Cold Start		 	
Status *			
Disabled	•		
Registered Action	*		
Severity *			

#### Event Name

System Events	Description
Cold Start	Power was cut off and then reconnected.
Warm Start	The Moxa industrial secure router was rebooted, such as when network
	parameters are changed (IP address, netmask, etc.).
Power 1 Transition (On->Off)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 1 is powered down.
Power 2 Transition (On->Off)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 2 is powered down.
Power 1 Transition (Off->On)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 1 is powered up.
Power 2 Transition (Off->On)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 2 is powered up.
DI (Off)	The digital input state is "0"
DI (On)	The digital input state is "1"
Config. Change	A configuration setting was changed.
Auth. Failure	An incorrect password was entered.
Ring/RSTP Topology Changed	The Ring/RSTP topology was changed.
Master Mismatch	A Turbo Ring Master mismatch occurred.
Coupling Topology Changed	The Coupling topology was changed.
Fiber Check Warning	The fiber port threshold has been exceeded.
VRRP State Change	The VRRP state was changed.
802.1X Auth. Failure	An 802.1X authentication failure occurred.
VPN Connected	VPN has been connected.
VPN Disconnected	VPN has been disconnected.
Firewall Policy	A firewall policy failure occurred.
Firmware Upgrade Success	Firmware upgrade was successful.
Firmware Upgrade Failure	An error occurred during the firmware upgrade.

#### Status

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable system event notifications.	Disabled

#### **Registered Action**

There are four response actions available on the Industrial Secure Router when events are triggered.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Тгар	The notification is sent to the Trap server when the event is triggered.	
Email	The notification is sent to the email server defined in the <u>Email</u> <u>Settings</u> section.	
Syslog	The event log is recorded to a Syslog server defined in the Syslog section.	None
Relay	The industrial secure router supports digital inputs to integrate sensors. When event is triggered, the device will automate alarm notifications through the relay output.	

#### Severity

Sevenity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Emergency	System is unusable	
Alert	Action must be taken immediately	
Critical	Critical conditions	
Error	Error conditions	Emergency
Warning	Warning conditions	Linergency
Notice	Normal but significant condition	
Info	Informational messages	
Debug	Debug-level messages	

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

## **Port Event Settings**

Port Events are related to the activity of a specific port.

## **Event Notifications**

Sy	stem		Port	_		
						Q Search
	Enable	Port	Link-On	Link-Off	Severity	Registered Action
i	Disabled	1/1	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
i	Disabled	1/2	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
i	Disabled	1/3	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
1	Disabled	1/4	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
1	Disabled	1/5	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
1	Disabled	1/6	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
1	Disabled	1/7	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
1	Disabled	1/8	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
1	Disabled	1/9	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
i	Disabled	1/10	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency	
						1 - 10 of 10 <

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify.

Edit Event Not	ification	
Port		
1/1		
Enabled *		
Disabled	<u> </u>	
Link-On *		
Disabled	*	
Link-Off *		
Disabled	*	
Desistand Action		_
Registered Action		
Severity *		
Emergency	*	
		CANCEL APPLY

#### Port

This is the physical port (1/1 to 1/10) on the Industrial Secure Router.

#### Enabled

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable event notifications for the port.	Disabled
Link-On		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Link-On events. If enabled, an event is triggered when the port is connected to another device.	Disabled
Link-Off		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable Link-Off events. If enabled, an event is triggered when the port is disconnected (e.g., the cable is unplugged, or the connected device is shut down).	Disabled

#### **Registered Action**

There are four response actions available on the Industrial Secure Router when events are triggered.

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Tran	The notification is sent to the Trap server when the event is	
Trap	triggered.	
Email	The notification is sent to the email server defined in the Email	
EIIIdii	Settings section.	
Suclea	The event log is recorded to a Syslog server defined in the	None
Syslog	Syslog section.	
	The industrial secure router supports digital inputs to integrate	
Relay	sensors. When event is triggered, the device will automate	
	alarm notifications through the relay output.	

Severity		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Emergency	System is unusable	
Alert	Action must be taken immediately	
Critical	Critical conditions	
Error	Error conditions	Emergency
Warning	Warning conditions	Linergency
Notice	Normal but significant condition	
Info	Informational messages	
Debug	Debug-level messages	

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

# Syslog

The Syslog function is used to set up Syslog servers for storing event logs. Up to three Syslog servers can be set up. When an event occurs, the event will be sent as a syslog UDP packet to the specified Syslog servers. Each Syslog server can be enabled individually.

Syslog 1 Disabled	v		
		UDP Port	
Address 1		514	
		1 - 65535	
Syslog 2			
Disabled	*		
		UDP Port	
Address 2		514	
		1 - 65535	
Syslog 3			
Disabled	•		
		UDP Port	
Address 3		514	
		1 - 65535	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the Syslog server.	Disabled
Address 1/2/3		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Address 1/2/3	Enter the IP address of the Syslog server.	None
UDP Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the UDP port of the Syslog server.	514

When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.



## NOTE

The following events will be recorded into the Moxa industrial secure router's Event Log table, and will then be sent to the specified Syslog Server:

- Cold start
- Warm start
- Configuration change activated
- Power 1/2 transition (Off (On), Power 1/2 transition (On (Off))
- Authentication fail
- Port link off/on
- Ring/RSTP Topology Change activated
- Master Mismatch
- Coupling Topology Change activated
- Fiber Check Warning
- VRRP State Change activated
- 802.1X Auth. fail
- VPN connected/disconnected
- Firewall policy
- Firmware upgrade success/failure

## **SNMP** Trap/Inform

•

## **General Settings**

		NMP Account	
Frap Mode *			
Trap V1	•		
Frap Community 1 *			
	0/30		
Recipient IP/Name 1	I	Recipient IP/Nan	ne 2
Recipient IP/Name 3	3		
nform Retries		Inform Timeout	
)		0	

#### Trap Mode

Setting	Factory Default					
Trap V1	Set the Trap version to Trap V1.					
Trap V2	Set the Trap version to Trap v2.					
Inform V2	Set the Inform version to Inform V2.	Trap V1				
Trap V3	Set the Trap version to Trap V3.					
Inform V3	Set the Inform version to Inform V3.					

Trap Community 1							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
max. 30 characters	max. 30 characters Specify the community string that will be used for authentication.						
Recipient IP/Name 1	/2/3						
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
Recipient IP or name	None						
Inform Retries							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
1 to 99 times	Specify the allowed number of retries for attempting to reconnect to a server.	0					
Inform Timeout							
Setting	Description	Factory Default					
1 to 300 seconds.	Set the retry interval when trying to reconnect to a server.	0					

## **SNMP** Account

# SNMP Trap/Inform

Genera	al	SNMP Accourt	nt										
Ð					Q Search								
	Name		Authentication Type	Encrypt	ion Method								
Max. 1					Items	s per page.	50	*	0 of 0	1<	<	>	>

## Create a SNMP Trap Account

Click the 🖿 icon to create a SNMP Trap account.

Create SNMP	P Trap A	ccount S	ettings		
Name *					
8	0/31				
Authentication Type *					
None	•				
Encryption Method *					
Disabled	*	0			
				CANCEL	CREATE

Name			
Setting	Description	Factory Default	
max. 31 characters	Enter a name for the account.	None	

Setting	Description	Factory Default
None	No authentication type will be used.	
MD5	Use MD5 authentication.	None
SHA	Use SHA authentication.	

Encryption Method	yption Metho	d
-------------------	--------------	---

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Disabled	Disable the encryption method.	
DES	Use DES encryption.	None
AES	Use AES encryption.	

If the Authentication Type is set to **MD5** or **SHA**, and the Encryption Method is set to **Enabled**, also configure the following settings:

Create SNMP T	rap Ad	count Settings		
Name *				
User-01				
8	7/31			
Authentication Type				
MD5	•	Authentication Key	* Ø	
		At least 8 characters	0/30	
Encryption Method *				
Enabled		Encryption Key *	ଷ୍ଠ 🚺	
50	1	At least 8 characters	0/30	
			CANCEL	CREATE

Create SNMP	Frap Ad	ccount Settings		
Name * User-01				
13	7/31			
Authentication Type				
SHA		Authentication Key	≤ <b>Ø</b>	
		At least 8 characters	0/30	
Encryption Method *				
Enabled		Encryption Key *	Q 🚺	
50 		At least 8 characters	0/30	
			CANCEL	CREATE

#### Authentication Key

Setting	Description	Factory Default
8 to 30 characters	Enter the authentication password.	None
Encryption Key		
Catting		
Setting	Description	Factory Default

When finished, click **CREATE** to create the SNMP Trap account.

#### Modify an Existing SNMP Trap Account

Click the 🖍 icon next to the entry you want to modify. When finished, click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## **Delete an Existing SNMP Trap Account**

Select the item(s) in the SNMP Trap account List. Click the **i** icon and click **DELETE** to delete the item(s).

# **Email Settings**

Mail Server	
0 / 60	
TCP Port	
25	
1 - 65535	
Username	Password
0 / 60	0 / 6
Sender Address	
D / 60	
1st Recipient Email Add	2nd Recipient Email Ad
0 / 60	0/6
3rd Recipient Email Add	4th Recipient Email Add.
0/60	0/6

Mail Server		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the email server address.	None
TCP Port		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 65535	Specify the TCP port of the email server.	25
Username		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the username used to log in to the email server.	None
Password		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the password used to log in to the email server.	None
Sender Address		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Max. 60 characters	Enter the sender's email address.	None
1st/2nd/3rd/4th Re	cipient Email Address	
Setting	Description	Factory Default
	Enter the recipient address. You can set up to 4 email	
Max. 60 characters	addresses to receive alarm emails from the Industrial Secure Router.	None

#### Send Test Email

After configuring the email settings, click **APPLY** to apply the settings. Press **SEND TEST EMAIL** to verify that the settings are working correctly.



#### NOTE

Auto warning e-mail messages will be sent through an authentication-protected SMTP server that supports the CRAM-MD5, LOGIN, and PAIN methods of SASL (Simple Authentication and Security Layer) authentication mechanism.

We strongly recommend not entering your Account Name and Account Password if auto warning e-mail messages can be delivered without using an authentication mechanism.

# Tools

From the **Tools** section, the following functions can be configured: **Port Mirror**, and **Ping**.



## **Port Mirror**

The **Port Mirror** function can be used to monitor data being transmitted through a specific port. This is done by setting up another port (the mirror port) to receive the same data being transmitted from, or both to and from, the port under observation. Using a mirror port allows the network administrator to sniff the observed port to keep tabs on network activity.

# Port Mirror Configuration Enable Disabled

Enable

Setting	Description	Factory Default
Enabled or Disabled	Enable or disable the port mirror function.	Disabled

If enabled, also configure the following settings:

Port Mirror Config	gurat
Enable *	
Enabled	•
Monitored Port *	•
Monitored Traffic *	
All Streams	*
Mirror Destination Port *	
1	Ŧ

#### **Monitored Port**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 10	Select the number of the port(s) whose network activity will be monitored. Multiple port can be selected.	Disabled

#### Monitored Traffic

Monitored Traffic		
Setting	Description	Factory Default
Ingress Stream, Egress Stream, All Streams	<ul> <li>Select the type of traffic that will be monitored.</li> <li>Ingress Stream Select this option to monitor only those data packets coming into the Moxa industrial secure router's port.</li> <li>Egress Stream Select this option to monitor only those data packets being sent out through the Moxa industrial secure router's port.</li> <li>All Streams Select this option to monitor data packets both coming into and being sent out through the Moxa industrial secure router's port.</li> </ul>	Disabled

#### **Mirror Destination Port**

Setting	Description	Factory Default
1 to 10	Select the number of the port that will be used to monitor the activity of the monitored port.	Disabled

When finished, click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{APPLY}}$  to save your changes.

## Ping

Ping		
IP Address/Domain Name *		
PING	0 / 50	
Ping result		Ŷ

The Ping function uses the ping command to give users a simple but powerful tool for troubleshooting network problems. The function's most unique feature is that even though the ping command is entered from the user's PC keyboard, the actual ping command originates from the Industrial Secure Router itself. In this way, the user can essentially control the Industrial Secure Router and send ping commands out through its ports.:

Type in the desired IP address and click **Ping**. The result of the ping will be displayed in the section below.

P Address/Domain Name *		
92.168.127.254		
	15 / 50	
PING		
Ping 192.168.127.254 result		^
Ping to 192.168.127.254. Packets	: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0	

The Industrial Secure Router comes with built-in SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) agent software that supports cold start trap, line up/down trap, and RFC 1213 MIB-II. The standard MIB groups that the Industrial Secure Router series support are:

#### MIB II.1 – System Group

sysORTable

#### MIB II.2 – Interfaces Group

ifTable

#### <u> MIB II.4 – IP Group</u>

ipAddrTable

ipNetToMediaTable

IpGroup

IpBasicStatsGroup

IpStatsGroup

#### <u>MIB II.5 – ICMP Group</u>

IcmpGroup

IcmpInputStatus

IcmpOutputStats

#### MIB II.6 – TCP Group

tcpConnTable

TcpGroup

TcpStats

#### <u>MIB II.7 – UDP Group</u>

udpTable

UdpStats

#### <u> MIB II.11 – SNMP Group</u>

SnmpBasicGroup

SnmpInputStats

#### SnmpOutputStats

#### Public Traps

- 1. Cold Start
- 2. Link Up
- 3. Link Down
- 4. Authentication Failure

#### Private Traps:

- 1. Configuration Changed
- 2. Power On
- 3. Power Off
- 4. DI Trap

This appendix lists the privileges for the different account roles.

# **User Role Privileges**

The following table lists the privileges of the different user roles for the functions of the device.

The table uses the follow letter designations:

- **R**: Read-only privilege
- W: Write privilege
- **R/W**: Read/write privilege

Function	Account Pr	ivilege	
System	Admin	Supervisor	User
System Management			I
- Information Settings	R/W	R/W	R
- Firmware Upgrade	R/W	R/W	R
- Software Package Management	R/W	R/W	R
- Configuration Backup and Restore	R/W	R/W	R
Account Management			<b>I</b>
- User Account	R/W	R	R
- Password Policy	R/W	R/W	R
License Management	R/W	R/W	R
Management Interface			<b>I</b>
- User Interface	R/W	R/W	R
- Hardware Interface	R/W	R/W	R
- SNMP	R/W	R/W	R
- MXsecurity	R/W	R/W	R
Time			
- System Time	R/W	R/W	R
- NTP/SNTP Server	R/W	R/W	R
Setting Check	R/W	R/W	R
Network Configuration	Admin	Supervisor	User
Port			
- Port Settings	R/W	R/W	R
- Link Aggregation	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 2 Switching			
- VLAN	R/W	R/W	R
- MAC Address Table	R/W	R/W	R
- QoS	R/W	R/W	R/W
- Rate Limit	R/W	R/W	R
- Multicast	R/W	R/W	R
Network Interface	R/W	R/W	R
Redundancy	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 2 Redundancy			
- Spanning Tree	R/W	R/W	R
- Turbo Ring V2	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 3 Redundancy			
- VRRP	R/W	R/W	R
Network Service	Admin	Supervisor	User
DHCP Server	R/W	R/W	R
Dynamic DNS	R/W	R/W	R

Function	Account Pri	vilege	
Routing	Admin	Supervisor	User
Unicast Routing			
- Static Routes	R/W	R/W	R
- RIP	R/W	R/W	R
- OSPF	R/W	R/W	R
- Routing Table	R	R	R
Multicast Route	ľ	•	
- Multicast Route Settings	R/W	R/W	R
- Static Multicast Route	R/W	R/W	R
Broadcast Forwarding	R/W	R/W	R
NAT	Admin	Supervisor	User
NAT Setting	R/W	R/W	R
Object Management	Admin	Supervisor	User
Object Management	R/W	R/W	R
Firewall	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 2 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 3 - 7 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Malformed Packets	R/W	R/W	R
Session Control	R/W	R/W	R
DoS Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Advanced Protection			
- Dashboard	R/W	R/W	R
- Configuration	R/W	R/W	R
- Protocol Filter Policy	R/W	R/W	R
- ADP	R/W	R/W	R
- IPS	R/W	R/W	R
VPN	Admin	Supervisor	User
IPsec	R/W	R/W	R
L2TP Server	R/W	R/W	R
Certification Management	R/W Admin	Supervisor	User
Certification Management Local Certificate	R/W Admin R/W	Supervisor R/W	<b>User</b> R
<b>Certification Management</b> Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate	R/W Admin R/W R/W	SupervisorR/WR/W	User R R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request	R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W	Supervisor       R/W       R/W       R/W	User R R R R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security	R/W Admin R/W R/W	SupervisorR/WR/W	User R R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security	R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin	Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         Supervisor	User R R R User
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy	R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W	Supervisor       R/W       R/W       R/W       Supervisor	User R R R User R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access	R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           R/W           Admin	Supervisor       R/W       R/W       Supervisor	User R R R User R R R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL	R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W	Supervisor       R/W       R/W       R/W       Supervisor	User R R R User R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security	R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	Supervisor       R/W       R/W       Supervisor       R/W       R/W       R/W       R/W       R/W	User         R         R         User         Vser         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         Image: Relation of the second se
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X	R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W Admin R/W R/W R/W R/W	Supervisor       R/W       R/W       Supervisor       R/W       R/W       R/W       R/W       R/W	User           R           R           User           Vser           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS	R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	User           R           R           User           User           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification	R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           Admin           R/W	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W	User           R           R           User           User           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis	R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           Admin           R/W           Admin           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W	User           R           R           User           User           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         Admin	Supervisor         R/W         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         Supervisor	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         Vue         User
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         <	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor	User           R           R           User           Vser           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R           R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         Admin	Supervisor         R/W         R/W         Supervisor         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         R/W         Supervisor	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         Vue         User
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         Image: R         Image
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status - Network Statistics	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R         R         R	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R           R           R           R/W	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R         R         R	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R           R/W           R           R           R           R	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           R           R/W           R           R/W           R           R/W	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Log - Event Notifications	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R         R/W         R         R/W         R/W         R         R/W         R	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R           R/W           R           R/W           R/W	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Notifications - Event Notifications - Event Log - Event Notifications - Syslog	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W <tr td=""></tr>	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R           R/W	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Notifications - Syslog - SNMP Trap/Inform	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W <tr td=""></tr>	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R           R/W           R/W           R/W           R           R/W           R/W      R/W      R/W <tr td=""></tr>	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Status - Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Notifications - Syslog - SNMP Trap/Inform - Email Settings	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W <tr td=""></tr>	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R           R/W	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R
Certification Management Local Certificate Trusted CA Certificate Certificate Signing Request Security Device Security - Login Policy - Trusted Access - SSH & SSL Network Security - IEEE 802.1X RADIUS MXview Alert Notification Diagnosis System Status - Utilization - Fiber Check Network Statistics - LLDP - ARP Table Event Log & Notifications - Event Log - Event Notifications - Syslog - SNMP Trap/Inform	R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W         Admin         R/W         Admin         R/W         R/W <tr td=""></tr>	Supervisor           R/W           R/W           Supervisor           R/W           R           R/W           R/W           R/W           R           R/W           R/W      R/W      R/W <tr td=""></tr>	User         R         R         User         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R         R

Function	Account Privilege		
- Ping	R/W	R/W	R